

GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD  
Form 20-F  
October 31, 2017  
[Table of Contents](#)

**UNITED STATES**  
**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
**WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

**FORM 20-F**

**REGISTRATION STATEMENT PURSUANT TO SECTION 12(b) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

**OR**

**ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**  
**For the fiscal year ended June 30, 2017**

**OR**

**TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

**OR**

**SHELL COMPANY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

Date of event requiring this shell company report . . . . .

**For the transition period from                    to**

# **GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED**

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in its charter)

**N/A**

(Translation of Registrant's name into English)

**AUSTRALIA**

(Jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

**60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria, 3065, Australia**

**Telephone: 011 61 3 8412 7000; Facsimile: 011 61 3 8412 7040**

(Address of principal executive offices)

**Kevin Fischer**

**Telephone: 011 61 3 8412 7000; Facsimile: 011 61 3 8412 7040**

**Email: kevin.fischer@gtglabs.com**

**60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria, 3065, Australia**

(Name, Telephone, E-mail and/or Facsimile number and Address of Company Contact Person)

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act. None

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act.

**American Depositary Shares each representing 150 Ordinary Shares**

**and evidenced by American Depositary Receipts**

Title of each Class

---

Table of Contents

Securities for which there is a reporting obligation pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Act. None

Number of outstanding shares of each of the issuer's classes of capital or common stock as of the close of the period covered by the annual report.

2,435,282,724 Ordinary Shares

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act.

Yes  No

If this report is an annual or transition report, indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

Yes  No

Note: Checking the box above will not relieve any registrant required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 from their obligations under those Sections.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days.

Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of large accelerated filer, accelerated filer, and emerging growth company in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer

Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company that prepares its financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.  Yes  No

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

The term new or revised financial accounting standard refers to any update issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board to its Accounting Standards Codification after April 5, 2012.

Indicate by check mark which basis of accounting the registrant has used to prepare the financial statements included in this filing:

U.S. GAAP

International Financial Reporting Standards as issued  
by the International Accounting Standards Board

Other

If Other has been checked in response to the previous question, indicate by check mark which financial statement item the registrant has elected to follow.

Item 17  Item 18

If this is an annual report, indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act).

Yes  No

(APPLICABLE ONLY TO ISSUERS INVOLVED IN BANKRUPTCY PROCEEDINGS DURING THE PAST FIVE YEARS)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has filed all documents and reports required to be filed by Sections 12, 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 subsequent to the distribution of securities under a plan confirmed by a court.

Yes  No

---

Table of Contents

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

Item 1.	<u>Identity of Directors, Senior Management and Advisers</u>	1
Item 2.	<u>Offer Statistics And Expected Timetable</u>	1
Item 3.	<u>Key Information</u>	1
Item 3.A	<u>Selected Financial Data</u>	1
Item 3.B	<u>Capitalization and Indebtedness</u>	3
Item 3.C	<u>Reasons for the Offer and Use of Proceeds</u>	3
Item 3.D	<u>Risk Factors</u>	4
Item 4.	<u>Information on the Company</u>	18
Item 4.A	<u>History and Development of the Company</u>	18
Item 4.B	<u>Business Overview</u>	19
Item 4.C	<u>Corporate Structure</u>	27
Item 4.D	<u>Property, Plant and Equipment</u>	28
Item 5.	<u>Operating and Financial Review and Prospects</u>	28
Item 5.A	<u>Operating Results</u>	28
Item 5.B	<u>Liquidity and Capital Resources</u>	33
Item 5.C	<u>Research and Development, Patents and Licenses, etc.</u>	34
Item 5.D	<u>Trend Information</u>	35
Item 5E.	<u>Off-balance sheet arrangements</u>	35
Item 5F.	<u>Information about contractual obligations</u>	35
Item 6.	<u>Directors, Senior Management and Employees</u>	35
Item 6.A	<u>Directors and Senior Management</u>	35
Item 6.B	<u>Compensation</u>	37

---

Table of Contents

Item 6.C	<u>Board Practices</u>	43
Item 6.D	<u>Employees</u>	45
Item 6.E	<u>Share Ownership</u>	45
Item 7.	<u>Major Shareholders and Related Party Transactions</u>	46
Item 7.A	<u>Major Shareholders</u>	46
Item 7.B	<u>Related Party Transactions</u>	46
Item 7.C	<u>Interests of Experts and Counsel</u>	46
Item 8.	<u>Financial Information</u>	46
Item 8.A	<u>Consolidated Statements and Other Financial Information</u>	46
Item 8.B	<u>Significant Changes to Financial Information</u>	47
Item 9.	<u>The Offer and Listing</u>	49
Item 9.A	<u>Offer and Listing Details</u>	49
Item 9.B	<u>Plan of Distribution</u>	50
Item 9.C	<u>Markets</u>	50
Item 9.D	<u>Selling Shareholders</u>	50
Item 9.E	<u>Dilution</u>	50
Item 9.F	<u>Expenses of the Issue</u>	51
Item 10.	<u>Additional Information</u>	51
Item 10.A	<u>Share Capital</u>	51
Item 10.B	<u>Our Constitution</u>	54
Item 10.C	<u>Material Contracts</u>	55
Item 10.D	<u>Exchange Controls and Other Limitations Affecting Security Holders</u>	56
Item 10.E	<u>Taxation</u>	56
Item 10.F	<u>Dividends and Paying Agents</u>	62
Item 10.G	<u>Statement by Experts</u>	62
Item 10.H	<u>Documents on Display</u>	62
Item 10.I	<u>Subsidiary Information</u>	63
Item 11.	<u>Quantitative And Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</u>	63



Table of Contents

Item 12.	<u>Description Of Securities Other Than Equity Securities</u>	63
Item 12.A	<u>Debt Securities</u>	63
Item 12.B	<u>Warrants and Rights</u>	63
Item 12.C	<u>Other Securities</u>	63
Item 12.D	<u>American Depositary Shares</u>	63
Item 13.	<u>Defaults, Dividend Arrearages and Delinquencies</u>	64
Item 14.	<u>Material Modifications to The Rights Of Security Holders and Use Of Proceeds</u>	64
Item 15.	<u>Controls and Procedures</u>	64
Item 15.A	<u>Disclosure controls and procedures</u>	64
Item 15.B	<u>Management s annual report on internal control over financial reporting</u>	64
Item 15.C	<u>Attestation report of the registered public accounting firm</u>	65
Item 15.D	<u>Changes in internal control over financial reporting</u>	65
Item 16.A	<u>Audit Committee Financial Expert</u>	66
Item 16.B	<u>Code Of Ethics</u>	66
Item 16.C	<u>Principal Accountant Fees and Services</u>	67
Item 16.D	<u>Exemptions From The Listing Standards For Audit Committees</u>	67
Item 16.E	<u>Purchases Of Equity Securities By The Issuer And Affiliated Purchasers</u>	67
Item 16.F	<u>Change in Registrant s Certifying Accountant</u>	67
Item 16.G	<u>Corporate Governance</u>	67
Item 16.H	<u>Mine Safety Disclosure</u>	67
Item 17.	<u>Financial Statements</u>	67
Item 18.	<u>Financial Statements</u>	67
Item 19.	<u>Exhibits</u>	68



Table of Contents

**INTRODUCTION**

In this Annual Report, the Company, Genetic Technologies, we, us and our refer to Genetic Technologies Limited and its consolidated subsidiaries.

Our consolidated financial statements are set out on pages F1 to F41 of this Annual Report (refer to Item 18 Financial Statements).

References to the ADSs are to our ADSs described in Item 12.D American Depositary Shares and references to the Ordinary Shares are to our Ordinary Shares described in Item 10.A Share Capital.

Our fiscal year ends on June 30 and references in this Annual Report to any specific fiscal year are to the twelve month period ended on June 30 of such year.

**FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

This Annual Report contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. We use words such as anticipates, believes, plans, expects, future, intends and similar expressions to identify such forward-looking statements. This Annual Report also contains forward-looking statements attributed to certain third parties relating to their estimates regarding the growth of Genetic Technologies and related service markets and spending. You should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements, which apply only as of the date of this Annual Report. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements for many reasons, including the risks faced by us described below under the caption Risk Factors and elsewhere in this Annual Report.

Although we believe that the expectations reflected in such forward-looking statements are reasonable at this time, we can give no assurance that such expectations will prove to be correct. Given these uncertainties, readers are cautioned not to place undue reliance on such forward-looking statements. Important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from our expectations are contained in cautionary statements in this Annual Report including, without limitation, in conjunction with the forward-looking statements included in this Annual Report and specifically under Item 3.D Risk Factors.

All subsequent written and oral forward-looking statements attributable to us are expressly qualified in their entirety by reference to these cautionary statements.

**ENFORCEMENT OF LIABILITIES AND SERVICE OF PROCESS**

## Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

We are incorporated under the laws of Western Australia in the Commonwealth of Australia. The majority of our directors and executive officers, and any experts named in this Annual Report, reside outside the U.S. Substantially all of our assets, our directors' and executive officers' assets and such experts' assets are located outside the U.S. As a result, it may not be possible for investors to affect service of process within the U.S. upon us or our directors, executive officers or such experts, or to enforce against them or us in U.S. courts, judgments obtained in U.S. courts based upon the civil liability provisions of the federal securities laws of the U.S. In addition, we have been advised by our Australian solicitors that there is doubt that the courts of Australia will enforce against us, our directors, executive officers and experts named herein, judgments obtained in the U.S. based upon the civil liability provisions of the federal securities laws of the U.S. or will enter judgments in original actions brought in Australian courts based upon the federal securities laws of the U.S.

Table of Contents

**PART I**

**Item 1. Identity of Directors, Senior Management and Advisers**

Not applicable

**Item 2. Offer Statistics and Expected Timetable**

Not applicable.

**Item 3. Key Information**

**Item 3.A Selected Financial Data**

The following selected financial data for the five years ended June 30, 2017 is derived from the audited consolidated financial statements of Genetic Technologies Limited, prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards ( IFRS ) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board, which became effective for our Company as of our fiscal year ended June 30, 2006.

The balance sheet data as of June 30, 2017 and 2016 and the statement of comprehensive income/(loss) data for the 2017, 2016 and 2015 fiscal years are derived from our audited consolidated financial statements which are included in this Annual Report. Balance sheet data as of June 30, 2015, 2014 and 2013 and statement of comprehensive income/ (loss) data for the 2014 and 2013 financial years are derived from our audited consolidated financial statements which are not included in this Annual Report. The data should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements, related notes and other financial information included herein.

All amounts are stated in Australian dollars as of June 30, as noted.

Table of Contents

## GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED

## CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME/ (LOSS)

FOR 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014 AND 2013

	Year ended June 30, 2017 AUD	Year ended June 30, 2016 AUD	Year ended June 30, 2015 AUD	Year ended June 30, 2014 AUD	Year ended June 30, 2013 AUD
<b>Revenue from operations</b>					
Genetic testing services	518,506	824,586	2,011,918	4,564,280	3,377,183
Less: cost of sales	(492,417)	(743,060)	(891,243)	(1,837,729)	(1,945,467)
Gross profit from operations	26,089	81,526	1,120,675	2,726,551	1,431,716
Other revenue		300,548	1,027,151	863,832	4,784,913
Gain on deconsolidation of subsidiary				761,361	
Selling and marketing expenses	(2,721,474)	(3,186,497)	(4,504,299)	(6,251,595)	(5,266,818)
General and administrative expenses	(3,109,530)	(3,429,357)	(4,222,988)	(3,173,109)	(4,413,782)
Licensing, patent and legal costs		(103,581)	(435,418)	(1,079,199)	(2,399,824)
Laboratory, research and development costs	(2,366,334)	(2,584,752)	(2,851,665)	(3,298,127)	(3,462,466)
Finance costs	(31,995)	(28,889)	(264,694)	(744,199)	(38,968)
Gain on disposal of business			1,396,798		
Impairment of intangible asset expense	(544,694)				
Fair value loss on ImmunAid option fee			(795,533)		
Share of net loss of associates accounted for using the equity method				(362,682)	(437,185)
Fair value gain/ (loss) on financial liabilities at fair value through profit or loss			349,246	(648,374)	
Non-operating income and expenses	344,112	492,037	370,557	1,071,072	452,931
<b>Profit/(loss) from continuing operations before income tax</b>	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)	(10,134,469)	(9,349,483)
Net profit from discontinued operation					
<b>Profit/(loss) before income tax</b>	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)	(10,134,469)	(9,349,483)
Income tax expense					
<b>Profit/(loss) for the year</b>	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)	(10,134,469)	(9,349,483)
<b>Other comprehensive income/(loss)</b>					
Exchange gains/(losses) on translation of controlled foreign operations	(130,655)	1,307,219	414,005	(149,162)	9,347
Exchange gains/(losses) on translation of non-controlled foreign operations				86	17,073
<b>Other comprehensive income/(loss) for the year, net of tax</b>	(130,655)	1,307,219	414,005	(149,076)	26,420
<b>Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year</b>	(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)	(8,396,165)	(10,283,545)	(9,323,063)
<b>Profit/(loss) for the year is attributable to:</b>					
Owners of Genetic Technologies Limited	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)	(10,125,197)	(9,298,367)
Non-controlling interests				(9,272)	(51,116)
<b>Total profit/(loss) for the year</b>	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)	(10,134,469)	(9,349,483)
<b>Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year is attributable to:</b>					

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

Owners of Genetic Technologies Limited	(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)	(8,396,165)	(10,274,359)	(9,289,020)
Non-controlling interests				(9,186)	(34,043)
<b>Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year</b>	<b>(8,534,481)</b>	<b>(7,151,746)</b>	<b>(8,396,165)</b>	<b>(10,283,545)</b>	<b>(9,323,063)</b>
<b>Earnings/(loss) per share (cents per share)</b>					
Basic and diluted net profit/(loss) per ordinary share	(0.40)	(0.49)	(0.82)	(1.76)	(1.97)
Weighted-average shares outstanding	2,121,638,888	1,715,214,158	1,072,803,358	574,557,747	472,084,970

Table of Contents**GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED****CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET DATA  
FOR 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014 AND 2013**

	As of June 30, 2017 AUD	As of June 30, 2016 AUD	As of June 30, 2015 AUD	As of June 30, 2014 AUD	As of June 30, 2013 AUD
<b>Assets</b>					
Current assets	11,631,649	12,131,070	19,566,096	4,360,509	2,657,416
Non-current assets	476,648	1,158,616	1,153,636	2,368,690	5,662,111
Total assets	12,108,297	13,289,686	20,719,732	6,729,199	8,319,527
<b>Liabilities</b>					
Current liabilities	(1,465,293)	(1,332,189)	(1,735,163)	(2,318,016)	(2,465,016)
Non-current liabilities	(63,960)	(74,308)	(25,321)	(2,583,664)	(96,224)
Total liabilities	(1,529,253)	(1,406,497)	(1,760,484)	(4,901,680)	(2,561,240)
Net assets	10,579,044	11,883,189	18,959,248	1,827,519	5,758,287
<b>Equity</b>					
Contributed equity	122,382,625	115,272,576	115,247,128	90,080,492	83,735,845
Reserves	6,044,493	6,054,861	4,697,403	3,922,140	3,951,771
Accumulated losses	(117,848,074)	(109,444,248)	(100,985,283)	(92,175,113)	(82,049,916)
Non-controlling interests					120,587
Total equity	10,579,044	11,883,189	18,959,248	1,827,519	5,758,287

**Exchange rates**

The following table sets forth, for the periods and dates indicated, certain information concerning the noon buying rate in New York City for Australian dollars expressed in U.S. dollars per \$1.00 as certified for customs purposes by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York.

Period ended	At period end USD	Average rate USD	High USD	Low USD
<b>Yearly data</b>				
June 2013	0.9165	1.0272	1.0591	0.9165
June 2014	0.9427	0.9186	0.9705	0.8715
June 2015	0.7704	0.8365	0.9488	0.7566
June 2016	0.7432	0.7289	0.7817	0.6855
June 2017	0.7676	0.7544	0.7733	0.7174
<b>Monthly data</b>				
April 2017	0.7475	0.7533	0.7604	0.7452
May 2017	0.7437	0.7437	0.7534	0.7352
June 2017	0.7676	0.7562	0.7680	0.7387
July 2017	0.7988	0.7807	0.7991	0.7584
August 2017	0.7932	0.7915	0.7983	0.7822
September 2017	0.7840	0.7974	0.8071	0.7831

**Item 3.B Capitalization and Indebtedness**

Not applicable.

**Item 3.C Reasons for the Offer and Use of Proceeds**

Not applicable.

Table of Contents

**Item 3.D Risk Factors**

Before you purchase our ADSs, you should be aware that there are risks, including those described below. You should consider carefully these risk factors together with all of the other information contained elsewhere in this Annual Report before you decide to purchase our ADSs.

**Risks Related to our Business and Business Strategy**

**A material uncertainty exists that may cast significant doubt about our Company's ability to continue as a Going concern.**

For the year ending June 30, 2017, the Group incurred a total comprehensive loss of \$8,534,481 (2016: \$7,151,746) and net cash outflow from operations of \$6,813,639 (2016: \$7,726,838). As at June 30, 2017 the Group held total cash and cash equivalents of \$10,988,255.

In light of these historical cash outflows, and further expected cash outflows from operations in the next twelve months, the Directors have initiated a comprehensive strategic review of the Group's operations. This review, which commenced during the first half of the 2018 financial year, is exploring a wide range of possible strategic alternatives designed to maximise near and long-term value for the Group's shareholders (the Group has retained Roth Capital Partners LLC to serve as a financial advisor in the process). The strategic review will also give consideration to future cash needs to ensure the Group continues to hold adequate levels of cash resources to meet creditors and other commitments.

The longer-term viability of the Group and its ability to continue as a going concern and meet its debts and commitments as they fall due is dependent on the successful completion and implementation of the results of the strategic review.

Due to the uncertainty surrounding the completion and implementation of the results of the strategic review, and the timing, quantum or the ability to raise additional funds if identified in the strategic review, there is a material uncertainty that may cast significant doubt on the Group's ability to continue as a going concern and therefore, that it may be unable to realise its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business. However, the Directors believe that the Group will be successful in the above matters and accordingly, have prepared the financial report on a going concern basis. As such no adjustments have been made to the financial statements relating to the recoverability and classification of the asset carrying amounts or classification of liabilities that might be necessary should the Group not be able to continue as a going concern.

**Our stock price is volatile and can fluctuate significantly based on events not in our control and general industry conditions. As a result, the value of your investment may decline significantly.**

The biotechnology sector can be particularly vulnerable to abrupt changes in investor sentiment. Stock prices of companies in the biotechnology industry, including ours, can swing dramatically, with little relationship to operating performance. Our stock price may be affected by a number



of factors including, but not limited to:

- product development events;
- the outcome of litigation;
- decisions relating to intellectual property rights;
- the entrance of competitive products or technologies into our markets;
- new medical discoveries;
- the establishment of strategic partnerships and alliances;
- changes in reimbursement policies or other practices related to the pharmaceutical industry; or
- other industry and market changes or trends.

Since our listing on the Australian Securities Exchange in August 2000, the price of our Ordinary Shares has ranged from a low of \$0.006 to a high of \$0.97 per share. Further fluctuations are likely to occur due to events which are not within our control and general market conditions affecting the biotechnology sector or the stock market generally.

In addition, low trading volume may increase the volatility of the price of our ADSs. A thin trading market could cause the price of our ADSs to fluctuate significantly more than the stock market as a whole. For example, trades involving a relatively small number of our ADSs may have a greater impact on the trading price for our ADSs than would be the case if the trading volume were higher.

The following chart illustrates the fluctuation in the price of our shares (in Australian dollars) over the last five years:

Table of Contents

(Refer Item 9.A for more information on key data points on this chart)

(Source: Yahoo Finance: <https://au.finance.yahoo.com/>)

**The fact that we do not expect to pay cash dividends may lead to decreased prices for our stock.**

We have never paid a cash dividend on our Ordinary Shares and we do not anticipate paying a cash dividend in the foreseeable future. We intend to retain future cash earnings, if any, for reinvestment in the development and expansion of our business. Whether we pay cash dividends in the future will be at the discretion of our Board of Directors and may be dependent on our financial condition, results of operations, capital requirements and any other factors our Board of Directors decides is relevant. As a result, an investor may only recognize an economic gain on an investment in our stock from an appreciation in the price of our stock.

**You may have difficulty in effecting service of legal process and enforcing judgments against us and our Management.**

We are a public company limited by shares, registered and operating under the Australian *Corporations Act 2001*. The majority of our directors and officers named in this Annual Report reside outside the U.S. Substantially all, or a substantial portion of, the assets of those persons are also located outside the U.S. As a result, it may not be possible to affect service on such persons in the U.S. or to enforce, in foreign courts, judgments against such persons obtained in U.S. courts and predicated on the civil liability provisions of the federal securities laws of the U.S. Furthermore, substantially all of our directly-owned assets are located outside the U.S., and, as such, any judgment obtained in the U.S. against us may not be collectible within the U.S. There is doubt as to the enforceability in the Commonwealth of Australia, in original actions or in actions for enforcement of judgments of U.S. courts, of civil liabilities predicated solely upon federal or state securities laws of the U.S., especially in the case of enforcement of judgments of U.S. courts where the defendant has not been properly served in Australia.

**Because we are not necessarily required to provide you with the same information as an issuer of securities based in the United States, you may not be afforded the same protection or information you would have if you had invested in a public corporation based in the United States.**

We are exempt from certain provisions of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, commonly referred to as the Exchange Act, that are applicable to U.S. public companies, including (i) the rules under the Exchange Act requiring the filing with the SEC of quarterly reports on Form 10-Q or current reports on Form 8-K; (ii) the sections of the Exchange Act regulating the solicitation of proxies, consents or authorizations in respect of a security registered under the Exchange Act; and (iii) the sections of the Exchange Act requiring insiders to file public reports of their stock ownership and trading activities and liability for insiders who profit from trades made in a short period of time. The exempt provisions would be available to you if you had invested in a U.S. corporation.

Table of Contents

However, in line with the Australian Securities Exchange regulations, we disclose our financial results on a semi-annual basis (which is performed under International Standard on Review Engagements) and to be fully audited annually (which is performed under International Standards on Auditing) which are required to have a limited review semi-annually and to be fully audited annually. The information, which may have an effect on our stock price on the Australian Securities Exchange, will be disclosed to the Australian Securities Exchange and also the Securities Exchange Commission. Other relevant information pertaining to our Company will also be disclosed in line with the Australian Securities Exchange regulations and information dissemination requirements for listed companies. We will provide our semi-annual results and other material information that we make public in Australia in the U.S. under the cover of an SEC Form 6-K. Nevertheless, you may not be afforded the same protection or information, which would be made available to you, were you investing in a United States public corporation because the requirements of a Form 10-Q and Form 8-K are not applicable to us.

**If significant liquidity does not eventuate for our ADSs on NASDAQ, your ability to resell your ADSs could be negatively affected because there would be limited buyers for your interests.**

Historically, there was virtually no trading in our ADSs through the pink sheets after the establishment of our Level I ADR Program. However, subsequent to the Level II listing of our ADSs on the NASDAQ Global Market on September 2, 2005, the trading volumes of our ADSs have increased. The Company subsequently transferred the listing of its ADSs to the NASDAQ Capital Market effective as from June 30, 2010. An active trading market for the ADSs, however, may not be maintained in the future. If an active trading market is not maintained, the liquidity and trading prices of the ADSs could be negatively affected.

On July 20, 2017 the Company received a notification letter (the Notice ) from the Listing Qualifications Department of The Nasdaq Stock Market, notifying the Company that its closing bid price has been below the minimum \$US1.00 per share requirement for a period of 30 consecutive business days and that the Company has not met the minimum bid price requirement of \$US1.00 per share for continued inclusion under Nasdaq Marketplace Listing Rules (the Rules ).

The Notice stated that in accordance with the Rules the Company has 180 calendar days, or until January 15, 2018, to regain compliance. To regain compliance with the minimum bid price requirement, the Company s securities must meet or exceed the \$US1.00 per share price for 10 consecutive business days.

This deficiency notice does not immediately affect the Company s Nasdaq listing.

If the Company does not regain compliance with the Rules by January 15, 2018, Nasdaq will determine whether the Company meets the continued listing requirement for market value of publicly held shares and all other initial listing standards for The Nasdaq Capital Market, with the exception of the bid price requirement. If it meets the initial listing criteria and upon written notice of the Company of its intention to cure the deficiency, Nasdaq will notify the Company that it has been granted an additional 180 calendar days compliance period. If the Company is not eligible for an additional compliance period, Nasdaq will provide written confirmation that the Company s securities will be delisted from The Nasdaq Capital Market.

The relevant Listing Rules are:-

- 5550(a)(2) - bid price
- 5810(c)(3)(A) - compliance period
- 5810(b) - public disclosure
- 5505 - Capital Market criteria

**In certain circumstances, holders of ADSs may have limited rights relative to holders of Ordinary Shares.**

The rights of holders of ADSs with respect to the voting of Ordinary Shares and the right to receive certain distributions may be limited in certain respects by the deposit agreement entered into by us and The Bank of New York Mellon. For example, although ADS holders are entitled under the deposit agreement, subject to any applicable provisions of Australian law and of our Constitution, to instruct the depositary as to the exercise of the voting rights pertaining to the Ordinary Shares represented by the American Depositary Shares, and the depositary has agreed that it will try, as far as practical, to vote the Ordinary Shares so represented in accordance with such instructions, ADS holders may not receive notices sent by the depositary in time to ensure that the depositary will vote the Ordinary Shares. This means that, from a practical point of view, the holders of ADSs may not be able to exercise their right to vote. In addition, under the deposit agreement, the depositary has the right to restrict distributions to holders of the ADSs in the event that it is unlawful or impractical to make such distributions. We have no obligation to take any action to permit distributions to holders of our American Depositary Receipts, or ADSs. As a result, holders of ADSs may not receive distributions made by us.

Table of Contents

**Our Company has a history of incurring losses.**

The business now called Genetic Technologies Limited was founded in 1989. With the exception of the year ended June 30, 2011, the Company has incurred operating losses in every year of its existence. As at June 30, 2017, the Company had accumulated losses of \$117,848,074 and the extent of any future losses and whether or not the Company can generate profits in future years remains uncertain. The Company currently does not generate sufficient revenue to cover its operating expenses. We expect our capital outlays and operating expenditures to continue to increase for the foreseeable future as we continue to commercialize and enhance the BREVAGenplus test, progress existing collaborative research programs while sourcing further collaborative opportunities and undertake a comprehensive strategic review, exploring a wide range of strategic alternatives. In order to fund the commercialization of BREVAGenplus, further expand our clinical laboratory operations, technologies and research & development activities, and undertake a comprehensive strategic review we may need to raise additional capital. There is no certainty that the Company will be able to raise additional funds by issuing further shares and/or the raising of debt and, if such funds are available, on what terms the Company would be able to secure them.

**There is a substantial risk that we are, or will become, a passive foreign investment company, or PFIC, which will subject our U.S. investors to adverse tax rules.**

Holders of our ADSs who are U.S. residents face income tax risks. There is a substantial risk that we are, or will become, a passive foreign investment company, commonly referred to as a PFIC. Our treatment as a PFIC could result in a reduction in the after-tax return to the holders of our ADSs and would likely cause a reduction in the value of such ADSs. For U.S. federal income tax purposes, we will be classified as a PFIC for any taxable year in which either (i) 75% or more of our gross income is passive income, or (ii) at least 50% of the average value of all of our assets for the taxable year produce or are held for the production of passive income. For this purpose, cash is considered to be an asset that produces passive income. We believe that we were a PFIC for the taxable year ended June 30, 2017 and there is a substantial risk we will be classified as a PFIC for the current taxable year. If we are classified as a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes, highly complex rules will apply to U.S. holders owning ADSs. Accordingly, you are urged to consult your tax advisors regarding the application of such rules. United States residents should carefully read Item 10.E. Additional Information Taxation, United States Federal Income Tax Consequences in this Annual Report, for a more complete discussion of the U.S. federal income tax risks related to owning and disposing of our ADSs.

**Risks Related to our Industry**

**Our sales cycle is typically lengthy.**

The sales cycle for our testing products is typically lengthy. As a result, we may expend substantial funds and management effort with no assurance of successfully selling our products or services. Our ability to obtain customers for our molecular risk assessment and predictive genetic testing services depends significantly on the perception that our services can help accelerate efforts in genomics. Our sales effort requires the effective demonstration of the benefits of our services to, and significant training of, many different departments within a potential customer. In addition, we sometimes are required to negotiate agreements containing terms unique to each customer. Our business could also be adversely affected if we expend money without any return.

**If our competitors develop superior products, our operations and financial condition could be affected.**

We are currently subject to increased competition from biotechnology and diagnostic companies, academic and research institutions and government or other publicly-funded agencies that are pursuing products and services which are substantially similar to our molecular risk assessment testing services, or which otherwise address the needs of our customers and potential customers. Our competitors in the predictive genetic testing and assessment market include private and public sector enterprises located in Australia, the U.S. and elsewhere. Many of the organizations competing with us are much larger and have more ready access to needed resources. In particular, they would have greater experience in the areas of finance, research and development, manufacturing, marketing, sales, distribution, technical and regulatory matters than we do. In addition, many of the larger current and potential competitors have already established name / brand recognition and more extensive collaborative relationships.

Our competitive position in the molecular risk assessment and predictive testing area is based upon, amongst other things, our ability to:

Table of Contents

- maintain first to market advantage;
- continue to strengthen and maintain scientific credibility through the process of obtaining scientific validation and undertaken further clinical trials supported by Peer-reviewed publication in medical journals;
- create and maintain scientifically-advanced technology and offer proprietary products and services;
- attract and retain qualified personnel;
- obtain patent or other protection for our products and services;
- obtain required government approvals and other accreditations on a timely basis; and
- successfully market our products and services.

If we are not successful in meeting these goals, our business could be adversely affected. Similarly, our competitors may succeed in developing technologies, products or services that are more effective than any that we are developing or that would render our technology and services obsolete, noncompetitive or uneconomical.

**We rely heavily upon patents and proprietary technology that may fail to protect our business.**

We rely upon our portfolio of patent rights, patent applications and exclusive licenses to patents and patent applications relating to genetic technologies. We expect to aggressively patent and protect our proprietary technologies. However, we cannot be certain that any additional patents will be issued to us as a result of our domestic or foreign patent applications or that any of our patents will withstand challenges by others. Patents issued to, or licensed by us may be infringed or third parties may independently develop the same or similar technologies. Similarly, our patents may not provide us with meaningful protection from competitors, including those who may pursue patents which may prevent, limit or interfere with our products or which may require licensing and the payment of significant fees or royalties by us to such third parties in order to enable us to conduct our business. We may sue or be sued by third parties regarding our patents and other intellectual property rights. These suits are often costly and would divert valuable funds, time and technical resources from our operations and cause a distraction to management.



**We have important relationships with external parties over whom we have limited control.**

We have relationships with academic consultants and other advisers who are not employed by us. Accordingly, we have limited control over their activities and can expect only limited amounts of their time to be dedicated to our activities. These persons may have consulting, employment or advisory arrangements with other entities that may conflict with or compete with their obligations to us. Our consultants typically sign agreements that provide for confidentiality of our proprietary information and results of studies. However, in connection with every relationship, we may not be able to maintain the confidentiality of our technology, the dissemination of which could hurt our competitive position and results from operations. To the extent that our scientific consultants develop inventions or processes independently that may be applicable to our proposed products, disputes may arise as to the ownership of the proprietary rights to such information, and we may not be successful with any dispute outcomes.

**We may be subject to professional liability suits and our insurance may not be sufficient to cover damages. If this occurs, our business and financial condition may be adversely affected.**

Our business exposes us to potential liability risks that are inherent in the testing, manufacturing, marketing and sale of molecular risk assessment and predictive tests. The use of our products and product candidates, whether for clinical trials or commercial sale, may expose us to professional liability claims and possible adverse publicity. We may be subject to claims resulting from incorrect results of analysis of genetic variations or other screening tests performed using our services. Litigation of such claims could be costly. We could expend significant funds during any litigation proceeding brought against us. Further, if a court were to require us to pay damages to a plaintiff, the amount of such damages could be significant and severely damage our financial condition. Although we have public and product liability insurance coverage under broadform liability and professional indemnity policies, for an aggregate amount of A\$60,000,000, the level or breadth of our coverage may not be adequate to fully cover any potential liability claims. To date we have not been subject to any claims, or ultimately liability, in excess of the amount of our coverage. In addition, we may not be able to obtain additional professional liability coverage in the future at an acceptable cost. A successful claim or series of claims brought against us in excess of our insurance coverage and the effect of professional liability litigation upon the reputation and marketability of our technology and products, together with the diversion of the attention of key personnel, could negatively affect our business.

**We use potentially hazardous materials, chemicals and patient samples in our business and any disputes relating to improper handling, storage or disposal of these materials could be time consuming and costly.**

Our research and development, production and service activities involve the controlled use of hazardous laboratory materials and chemicals, including small quantities of acid and alcohol, and patient tissue samples. We do not knowingly deal with infectious samples.

Table of Contents

We, our collaborators and service providers are subject to stringent Australian federal, state and local laws and regulations governing occupational health and safety standards, including those governing the use, storage, handling and disposal of these materials and certain waste products. However, we could be liable for accidental contamination or discharge or any resultant injury from hazardous materials, and conveyance, processing, and storage of and data on patient samples. If we, our collaborators or service providers fail to comply with applicable laws or regulations, we could be required to pay penalties or be held liable for any damages that result and this liability could exceed our financial resources. Further, future changes to environmental health and safety laws could cause us to incur additional expense or restrict our operations. To date, we have not had a reportable event or serious injury.

In addition, our collaborators and service providers may be working with these same types of hazardous materials, including hazardous chemicals, in connection with our collaborations. In the event of a lawsuit or investigation, we could be held responsible for any injury caused to persons or property by exposure to, or release of, these hazardous materials or patient samples that may contain infectious materials. The cost of this liability could exceed our resources. While we maintain broadform liability insurance coverage for these risks, in the amount of up to A\$40,000,000, the level or breadth of our coverage may not be adequate to fully cover potential liability claims. To date, we have not been subject to claims, or ultimately liability, in excess of the amount of our coverage. Our broadform insurance coverage also covers us against losses arising from an interruption of our business activities as a result of the mishandling of such materials. We also maintain workers compensation insurance, which is mandatory in Australia, covering all of our workers in the event of injury.

**We depend on the collaborative efforts of our academic and corporate partners for research, development and commercialization of some of our products. A breach by our partners of their obligations, or the termination of the relationship, could deprive us of valuable resources and require additional investment of time and money.**

Our strategy for research, development and commercialization of some of our products has historically involved entering into various arrangements with academic, corporate partners and others. As a result, the success of our strategy depends, in part, upon the strength of those relationships and these outside parties undertaking their responsibilities and performing their tasks to the best of their ability and responding in a timely manner. Our collaborators may also be our competitors. We cannot necessarily control the amount and timing of resources that our collaborators devote to performing their contractual obligations and we have no certainty that these parties will perform their obligations as expected or that any revenue will be derived from these arrangements.

If our collaborators breach or terminate their agreement with us or otherwise fail to conduct their collaborative activities in a timely manner, the development or commercialization of the product candidate or research program under such collaborative arrangement may be delayed. If that is the case, we may be required to undertake unforeseen additional responsibilities or to devote unforeseen additional funds or other resources to such development or commercialization, or such development or commercialization could be terminated. The termination or cancellation of collaborative arrangements could adversely affect our financial condition, intellectual property position and general operations. In addition, disagreements between collaborators and us could lead to delays in the collaborative research, development, or commercialization of certain products or could require or result in formal legal process or arbitration for resolution. These consequences could be time-consuming and expensive and could have material adverse effects on the Company.

Other than our contractual rights under our license agreements, we may be limited in our ability to convince our licensees to fulfill their obligations. If our licensees fail to act promptly and effectively, or if a dispute arises, it could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and the price of our ordinary shares and ADSs.

We rely upon scientific, technical and clinical data supplied by academic and corporate collaborators, licensors, licensees, independent contractors and others in the evaluation and development of potential therapeutic methods. There may be errors or omissions in this data that would materially adversely affect the development of these methods.

We may seek additional collaborative arrangements to develop and commercialize our products in the future. We may not be able to negotiate acceptable arrangements in the future and, if negotiated, we have no certainty that they will be on favorable terms or if they will be successful. In addition, our partners may pursue alternative technologies independently or in collaboration with others as a means of developing treatments for the diseases targeted by their collaborative programs with us. If any of these events occur, the progress of the Company could be adversely affected and our results of operations and financial condition could suffer.

**Currently our financial results depend largely on the sales of our breast cancer risk assessment test, *BREVAGenplus*.**

For the near future, we expect to continue to derive a substantial majority of our revenues from sales of one product, our breast cancer risk test *BREVAGen*. We do not expect to recognize significant revenues from *BREVAGenplus*, a second generation *BREVAGen* product, until increased levels of adoption and reimbursement for this test have been established. If we are unable to increase sales of *BREVAGenplus* or successfully develop and commercialize other tests or enhancements, our ability to achieve sustained revenues and profitability would be impacted.

Table of Contents

**If our sole laboratory facility becomes inoperable, we will be unable to perform our tests and our business will be harmed.**

We do not have redundant clinical reference laboratory facilities outside of Melbourne, Australia. Our current lease of laboratory premises expires August 31, 2018. The facility and the equipment we use to perform our tests would be costly to replace and could require substantial lead time to repair or replace. The facility may be harmed or rendered inoperable by natural or man-made disasters, including flooding and power outages, which may render it difficult or impossible for us to perform our tests for some period of time. The inability to perform our tests or the backlog of tests that could develop if our facility is inoperable for even a short period of time may result in the loss of customers or harm our reputation, and we may be unable to regain those customers in the future.

If we no longer had our own facility and needed to rely on a third party to perform our tests, we could only use another facility with established state licensure and Clinical Laboratory Improvements Amendments (CLIA) accreditation under the scope of which BREVAgen<sup>plus</sup> tests could be performed following validation and other required procedures. We cannot assure you that we would be able to find another CLIA-certified facility willing to comply with the required procedures, that this laboratory would be willing to perform the tests on commercially reasonable terms, or that it would be able to meet our quality standards. In order to establish a redundant clinical reference laboratory facility, we would have to spend considerable time and money securing adequate space, constructing the facility, recruiting and training employees, and establishing the additional operational and administrative infrastructure necessary to support a second facility. We may not be able, or it may take considerable time, to replicate our testing processes or results in a new facility. Additionally, any new clinical reference laboratory facility would be subject to certification under CLIA and licensing by several states, including California and New York, which could take a significant amount of time and result in delays in our ability to begin operations.

**The loss of key members of our senior management team or our inability to attract and retain highly skilled scientists, clinicians and salespeople could adversely affect our business.**

Our success depends largely on the skills, experience and performance of key members of our executive management team and others in key management positions. The efforts of each of these persons together will be critical as we continue to develop our technologies and testing processes, continue our international expansion and transition to a company with multiple commercialized products on offer. If we were to lose one or more of these key employees, we may experience difficulties in competing effectively, developing our technologies and implementing our business strategies.

Our research and development programs and commercial laboratory operations depend on our ability to attract and retain highly skilled scientists and technicians, including licensed laboratory technicians, chemists, biostatisticians and engineers. We may not be able to attract or retain qualified scientists and technicians in the future due to the competition for qualified personnel among life science businesses. In addition, if there were to be a shortage of clinical laboratory scientists in coming years, this would make it more difficult to hire sufficient numbers of qualified personnel. We also face competition from universities and public and private research institutions in recruiting and retaining highly qualified scientific personnel. In addition, our success depends on our ability to attract and retain salespeople with extensive experience in oncology and close relationships with medical oncologists, pathologists and other hospital personnel. We may have difficulties sourcing, recruiting or retaining qualified salespeople, which could cause delays or a decline in the rate of adoption of our tests. If we are not able to attract and retain the necessary personnel to accomplish our business objectives, we may experience constraints that could adversely affect our ability to support our research and development and sales programs. All of our U.S employees are at-will, which means that either we or the employee may terminate their employment at any time.

**FDA regulation of LDTs may result in significant changes, and our business could be adversely impacted if we fail to adapt.**

Clinical laboratory tests like ours are regulated under the CLIA, as well as by applicable state laws. Diagnostic kits that are sold and distributed through interstate commerce are regulated as medical devices by the federal Food and Drug Administration (FDA). The FDA has exercised its discretion and has not subjected most Laboratory Developed Tests, or LDTs to FDA regulation, although reagents or software provided by third parties and used to perform LDTs may be subject to regulation.

The FDA claims to have regulatory authority over LDTs under the Medical Device Amendments of 1976 and has stated in the past that it would issue guidance to the industry regarding its regulatory approach. In such discussions, the FDA has indicated that it would use a risk-based approach to regulation and would direct more resources to tests with wider distribution and with the highest risk of injury, but that it will be sensitive to the need to not adversely impact patient care or innovation. In October 2014, the FDA announced its framework and timetable for implementing this guidance. We cannot predict the ultimate timing or form of any such guidance or regulation and the potential impact on our existing tests. If adopted, such a regulatory approach by the FDA may lead to an increased regulatory burden, including additional costs and delays in introducing new tests or even continuing with our current tests. While the ultimate impact of the FDA's approach is unknown, it may be extensive and may result in significant changes. Our failure to adapt to these changes could have a material adverse effect on our business.

If the FDA decides to regulate our tests, it may require additional pre-market clinical testing prior to submitting a regulatory notification or application for commercial sales. If we are required to conduct pre-market clinical trials, whether using prospectively

Table of Contents

acquired samples or archival samples, delays in the commencement or completion of clinical testing could significantly increase our test development costs and delay commercialization of any future tests, and interrupt sales of our current tests. Many of the factors that may cause or lead to a delay in the commencement or completion of clinical trials may also ultimately lead to delay or denial of regulatory clearance or approval. The commencement of clinical trials may be delayed due to insufficient patient enrollment, which is a function of many factors, including the size of the patient population, the nature of the protocol, the proximity of patients to clinical sites and the eligibility criteria for the clinical trial.

We may find it necessary to engage contract research organizations to perform data collection and analysis and other aspects of our clinical trials, which might increase the cost and complexity of our trials. We may also depend on clinical investigators, medical institutions and contract research organizations to perform the trials. If these parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or obligations or meet expected deadlines, or if the quality, completeness or accuracy of the clinical data they obtain is compromised due to the failure to adhere to our clinical protocols or for other reasons, our clinical trials may have to be extended, delayed or terminated. Many of these factors would be beyond our control. We may not be able to enter into replacement arrangements without undue delays or considerable expenditures. If there are delays in testing or approvals as a result of the failure to perform by third parties, our research and development costs would increase, and we may not be able to obtain regulatory clearance or approval for our tests. In addition, we may not be able to establish or maintain relationships with these parties on favorable terms, if at all. Each of these outcomes would harm our ability to market our tests, or to achieve sustained profitability.

Even if the clinical trials are timely completed, there is no assurance that the results of those trials will be sufficient to support regulatory clearance or approval for the intended indications. Failure of the clinical data to support an intended use of given LDT would likely have an adverse impact on the Company.

**Our business could be harmed from the loss or suspension of a license or imposition of a fine or penalties under, or future changes in, or changing interpretations of, CLIA or state laboratory licensing laws to which we are subject.**

The clinical laboratory testing industry is subject to extensive federal and state regulation, and many of these statutes and regulations have not been interpreted by the courts. The regulations implementing CLIA set out federal regulatory standards that apply to virtually all clinical laboratories (regardless of the location, size or type of laboratory), including those operated by physicians in their offices, by requiring that they be certified by the federal government or by a federally approved accreditation agency. CLIA does not preempt state law, which in some cases may be more stringent than federal law and require additional personnel qualifications, quality control, record maintenance and proficiency testing. The sanction for failure to comply with CLIA and state requirements may be suspension, revocation or limitation of a laboratory's CLIA certificate, which is necessary to conduct business, as well as significant fines and/or criminal penalties. Several states have similar laws and we may be subject to similar penalties. If the certification of one laboratory owned by the Company is suspended or revoked that may preclude the Company from owning or operating any other laboratory in the Country for two years.

We cannot assure you that applicable statutes and regulations and more specifically, the Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, will not be interpreted or applied by a prosecutorial, regulatory or judicial authority in a manner that would adversely affect our business. Potential sanctions for violation of these statutes and regulations include significant fines and the suspension or loss of various licenses, certificates and authorizations, which could have a material adverse effect on our business. In addition, compliance with future legislation could impose additional requirements on us, which may be costly.

**Failure to establish, and perform to, appropriate quality standards to assure that the highest level of quality is observed in the performance of our testing services and in the design, manufacture and marketing of our products could adversely affect the results of our operations and adversely impact our reputation.**

The provision of clinical testing services, and the design, manufacture and marketing of diagnostic products involve certain inherent risks. The services that we provide and the products that we design, manufacture and market are intended to provide information for healthcare providers in providing patient care. Therefore, users of our services and products may have a greater sensitivity to errors than the users of services or products that are intended for other purposes.

Similarly, negligence in performing our services can lead to injury or other adverse events. We may be sued under common law, physician liability or other liability law for acts or omissions by our laboratory personnel. We are subject to the attendant risk of substantial damages awards and risk to our reputation.

**Failure to timely or accurately bill for our services could have a material adverse effect on our business.**

Billing for clinical testing services is extremely complicated and is subject to extensive and non-uniform rules and administrative requirements. Depending on the billing arrangement and applicable law, we bill various payers, such as patients, insurance companies,

Table of Contents

Medicare, Medicaid, physicians and hospitals. Changes in laws regulations and contract terms could increase the complexity and cost of our billing process. Additionally, auditing for compliance with applicable laws and regulations as well as internal compliance policies and procedures add further cost and complexity to the billing process.

Missing or incorrect information on requisitions adds complexity to and slows the billing process, creates backlogs of unbilled requisitions, and generally increases the aging of accounts receivable and bad debt expense. Failure to timely or correctly bill may lead to us not being reimbursed for our services or an increase in the aging of our accounts receivable, which could adversely affect our results of operations and cash flows. Failure to comply with applicable laws relating to billing government healthcare programs or private healthcare programs that operate under government contract could lead to various penalties, including: (1) exclusion or suspension from participation in federal health care programs ; (2) asset forfeitures; (3) civil and criminal fines and penalties; (3) possible liability under the federal False Claims Act and state analogs, and (4) the loss of various licenses, certificates and authorizations necessary to operate our business, any of which could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations or cash flows.

In order to, amongst other things, simplify the billing process, in April 2017, the Company transitioned to a direct self-pay programme. We cannot assure you that this change will address and minimize all of the billing risks.

**Failure to comply with complex federal and state laws and regulations related to submission of claims for clinical laboratory services could result in significant monetary damages and penalties and exclusion from the Medicare and Medicaid programs.**

We are subject to extensive federal and state laws and regulations relating to the submission of claims for payment for clinical laboratory services, including those that relate to coverage of our services under Medicare, Medicaid and other governmental health care programs, the amounts that may be billed for our services and to whom claims for services may be submitted. In addition, we are subject to various laws regulating our interactions with other healthcare providers and with patients, such as the Anti-Kickback Statute, the Anti-Inducement Statute, and the Ethics in Patient Referrals Act of 1989, commonly referred to as the Stark law. These laws are complicated.

Our failure to comply with applicable laws and regulations could result in our inability to receive payment for our services or result in attempts by third-party payers, such as Medicare and Medicaid, to recover payments from us that have already been made. Submission of claims in violation of certain statutory or regulatory requirements can result in penalties, including substantial civil penalties for each item or service billed to Medicare in violation of the legal requirement, and exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other federal health care programs. Government authorities or whistleblowers may also assert that violations of laws and regulations related to submission or causing the submission of claims violate the federal False Claims Act, or FCA, or other laws related to fraud and abuse, including submission of claims for services that were not medically necessary. Violations of the FCA could result in significant economic liability. The FCA provides that all damages are trebled, and each false claim submitted is subject to a penalty of up to \$21,563 for violations occurring after November 2, 2015 and \$11,000 for violations occurring before November 2, 2015. For example, we could be subject to FCA liability if it were determined that the services we provided were not medically necessary and not reimbursable or if it were determined that we improperly paid physicians who referred patients to our laboratory. It is also possible that the government could attempt to hold us liable under fraud and abuse laws for improper claims submitted by an entity for services that we performed if we were found to have knowingly participated in the arrangement that resulted in submission of the improper claims.

**Failure to comply with HIPAA, including regarding the use of new standard transactions, may negatively impact our profitability and cash flows.**



Pursuant to the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, as amended, or HIPAA, we must comply with comprehensive privacy and security standards with respect to the use and disclosure of protected health information, as well as standards for electronic transactions, including specified transaction and code set rules. Under the 2009 HITECH amendments to HIPAA, the law was expanded, including requirements to provide notification of certain identified data breaches, direct patient access to laboratory records, the extension of certain HIPAA privacy and security standards directly to business associates, and heightened penalties for noncompliance, and enforcement efforts.

In addition, HIPAA not only seeks to ensure patient privacy, but also requires providers that bill electronically to do so using standard code sets. These HIPAA transaction standards are complex, and subject to differences in interpretation by payers. For instance, some payers may interpret the standards to require us to provide certain types of information, including demographic information not usually provided to us by physicians. As a result of inconsistent application of transaction standards by payers or our inability to obtain certain billing information not usually provided to us by physicians, we could face increased costs and complexity, a temporary disruption in receipts and ongoing reductions in the timeliness of reimbursement. In addition, new requirements for additional standard transactions,

Table of Contents

such as claims attachments, Version 5010 of the HIPAA Transaction Standards and the ICD-10-CM Code Set, could prove technically difficult, time-consuming or expensive to implement.

**Complying with numerous regulations pertaining to our business is an expensive and time-consuming process, and any failure to comply could result in substantial penalties.**

The clinical laboratory testing industry is highly regulated and there can be no assurance that the regulatory environment in which we operate will not change significantly and adversely in the future. Areas of the regulatory environment that may affect our ability to conduct business include, without limitation:

- federal and state laws applicable to billing and claims payment;
- federal and state laboratory anti-mark-up laws;
- federal and state anti-kickback laws;
- federal and state false claims laws;
- federal self-referral and financial inducement prohibition laws, commonly known as the Stark Law, and the state equivalents;
- federal and state laws governing laboratory licensing and testing, including CLIA;
- federal and state laws governing the LDTs;
- HIPAA, along with the revisions to HIPAA as a result of the HITECH Act, and analogous state laws;
- federal, state and foreign regulation of privacy, security, electronic transactions and identity theft;
- federal, state and local laws governing the handling, transportation and disposal of medical and hazardous waste;
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration rules and regulations;
- changes to laws, regulations and rules as a result of the Health Care Reform Law; and
- changes to other federal, state and local laws, regulations and rules, including tax laws.

We have adopted policies and procedures designed to comply with these laws. In the ordinary course of business, there is an ongoing awareness of the importance of compliance with these laws. The growth of our business and sales organization may increase the potential for violating these laws or our internal policies and procedures, despite our ongoing vigilance in maintaining and updating our compliance procedures. The

risk of being found in violation of these or other laws and regulations is further increased by the fact that many of them are extremely complex and in many instances, there are no significant regulatory or judicial interpretations of these laws and regulations. Any action brought against us for violation of these or other laws or regulations, even if we successfully defend against it, could cause us to incur significant legal expenses and divert management's attention. Any determination that we have violated these laws or regulations, or a public announcement that we are being investigated for possible violations of these laws or regulations, could harm our reputation, operating results and financial condition. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of these laws and regulations, we may be subject to any applicable penalty associated with the violation, including civil and criminal penalties, damages and fines, we could be required to refund payments received by us, and we could be required to curtail or cease our operations. In addition, a significant change in any of these laws or regulations may require us to change our business model in order to maintain compliance with these laws or regulations, which could harm our operating results and financial condition.

**A failure to comply with any of federal or state laws applicable to our business, particularly laws related to the elimination of healthcare fraud, may adversely impact our business.**

Federal officials responsible for administering and enforcing the healthcare laws and regulations have made a priority of eliminating healthcare fraud. For example, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care Education and Reconciliation Act of 2010, jointly the Affordable Care Act, includes significant new fraud and abuse measures, including required disclosures of financial arrangements between drug and device manufacturers, on the one hand, and physicians and teaching hospitals, on the other hand. Federal funding available for combating health care fraud and abuse generally has increased. While we seek to conduct our business in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, many of the laws and regulations applicable to our business, particularly those relating to billing and reimbursement of tests and those relating to relationships with physicians, hospitals and patients, contain language that has not been interpreted by courts. We must rely on our interpretation of these laws and regulations based on the advice of our counsel and regulatory or law enforcement authorities may not agree with our interpretation of these laws and regulations and may seek to enforce legal remedies or penalties against us for violations. From time to time we may need to change our operations, particularly pricing or billing practices, in response to changing interpretations of these laws and regulations or regulatory or judicial determinations with respect to these laws and regulations. These occurrences, regardless of their outcome, could damage our reputation and harm important business relationships that we have with healthcare providers, payers and others. Furthermore, if a regulatory or judicial authority finds that we have not complied with applicable laws and regulations, we could be required to refund amounts that were billed and collected in violation of such laws and regulations. In addition, we may voluntarily refund amounts that were alleged to have been billed and collected in violation of applicable laws and regulations. In either case, we could suffer civil and criminal damages, fines and penalties, exclusion from participation in governmental healthcare programs and the loss of licenses, certificates and

Table of Contents

authorizations necessary to operate our business, as well as incur liabilities from third-party claims, all of which could harm our operating results and financial condition. Moreover, regardless of the outcome, if we or physicians or other third parties with whom we do business are investigated by a regulatory or law enforcement authority we could incur substantial costs, including legal fees, and our management may be required to divert a substantial amount of time to an investigation.

To enhance compliance with applicable health care laws, and mitigate potential liability in the event of noncompliance, regulatory authorities, such as the United States Department of Health and Human Services Office of Inspector General, or OIG, have recommended the adoption and implementation of a comprehensive health care compliance program that generally contains the elements of an effective compliance and ethics program described in Section 8B2.1 of the United States Sentencing Commission Guidelines Manual, and for many years the OIG has made available a model compliance program targeted to the clinical laboratory industry. In addition, certain states, such as New York, require that health care providers, such as clinical laboratories, that engage in substantial business under the state Medicaid program have a compliance program that generally adheres to the standards set forth in the Model Compliance Program. Also, under the Affordable Care Act, the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or HHS, will require suppliers, such as the Company, to adopt, as a condition of Medicare participation, compliance programs that meet a core set of requirements.

**Failure to maintain the security of patient-related information or compliance with security requirements could damage our reputation with customers, cause us to incur substantial additional costs and become subject to litigation.**

Pursuant to HIPAA, and certain similar state laws, we must comply with comprehensive privacy and security standards with respect to the use and disclosure of protected health information. Under the HITECH amendments to HIPAA, HIPAA was expanded to require certain data breach notification, to extend certain HIPAA privacy and security standards directly to business associates, to heighten penalties for noncompliance, and enhance enforcement efforts.

We receive certain personal and financial information about our clients and their patients. In addition, we rely heavily on communications and information systems to conduct our business. Our operations depend heavily upon the secure transmission of confidential information over public networks. We are transitioning our products commercial program to an ecommerce based solution, which places our assets, customer data and other personally identifiable data at higher risks. We are making investments to ensure that our employees are aware of cyber security risks facing the Company and how to prevent data breaches. A compromise in our security systems that results in client or patient personal information being obtained by unauthorized persons or our failure to comply with security requirements for financial transactions could adversely affect our reputation with our clients and result in litigation against us or the imposition of penalties, all of which may adversely affect our operations, financial condition and liquidity. Although we are not aware of the occurrence of any data breaches, we continue to update our cyber security tools and processes in an attempt to keep pace with evolving cyber security risks.

**Changes in regulation and policies, including increasing downward pressure on health care reimbursement, may adversely affect reimbursement for diagnostic services and could have a material adverse impact on our business.**

Reimbursement levels for health care services are subject to continuous and often unexpected changes, and we face a variety of efforts by government payers to reduce utilization and reimbursement for diagnostic testing services. Changes in governmental reimbursement may result from statutory and regulatory changes, retroactive rate adjustments, administrative rulings, competitive bidding initiatives, or other policy changes.

The U.S. Congress has considered, at least yearly in conjunction with budgetary legislation, changes to one or both of the Medicare fee schedules under which we receive reimbursement, which include the clinical laboratory fee schedule for our clinical laboratory services. For example, Congress has periodically considered imposing a 20 percent coinsurance on laboratory services. If enacted, this would require us to attempt to collect this amount from patients, although in many cases the costs of collection would exceed the amount actually received.

The CMS pays laboratories on the basis of a fee schedule that is reviewed and re-calculated on an annual basis. CMS may change the fee schedule upward or downward on billing codes that we submit for reimbursement on a regular basis. Our revenue and business may be adversely affected if the reimbursement rates associated with such codes are reduced. Even when reimbursement rates are not reduced, policy changes add to our costs by increasing the complexity and volume of administrative requirements. Medicaid reimbursement, which varies by state, is also subject to administrative and billing requirements and budget pressures. **Recently, state budget pressures have caused states to consider several policy changes that may impact our financial condition and results of operations, such as delaying payments, reducing reimbursement, restricting coverage eligibility and service coverage, and imposing taxes on our services.**

The transition to a direct self-pay programme in April 2017 may reduce the reimbursement risks by placing the responsibility for payment purely with the patient, although overall market adoption and revenue generation may be adversely affected.

Table of Contents

**Healthcare policy changes, including recently enacted legislation reforming the U.S. healthcare system, may have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.**

Fees for most laboratory services reimbursed by Medicare are established in the Clinical Laboratory Fee Schedule (CLFS), and fees for other testing reimbursed by Medicare, primarily related to pathology, are covered by the Physician Fee Schedule (PFS). Over the past several years, the Company has experienced governmental pay reductions as a direct result of the Affordable Care Act (ACA), the Medicare Access and CHIP Reauthorization Act of 2015 (MACRA) and the Achieving a Better Life Experience Act of 2014 (ABLE Act). In addition, the Protecting Access to Medicare Act (PAMA), which became law on April 1, 2014, is expected to result in a future net reduction in reimbursement revenue under the CLFS. These laws include provisions designed to control healthcare expenses reimbursed by government programs through a combination of reductions to fee schedules, incentives to providers to participate in alternative payment models such as risk-sharing and new methods to establish and adjust fees.

The Affordable Care Act makes changes that are expected to significantly affect clinical laboratories, among others. Beginning in 2013, each medical device manufacturer must pay a sales tax (medical device excise tax – MDET ) in an amount equal to 2.3% of the price for which such manufacturer sells its medical devices that are listed with the FDA. The Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2016 (Dec. 18, 2015) imposed a two-year moratorium on this medical device tax so it would not apply to the sale of a taxable medical device by the manufacturer, producer, or importer of the device during the period beginning on Jan. 1, 2016, and ending on Dec. 31, 2017. Repeal of the MDET was included in the House passed American Health Care Act of 2017 and the Senate’s Better Care Reconciliation Act released on July 13, 2017; however, the Senate has thus far failed to pass its bill to repeal and replace the Affordable Care Act. Senate discussions appear to be ongoing, and MDET repeal could be included in other legislation considered in 2017, such as tax reform.

Although the FDA has contended that LDTs are medical devices, none of our products is currently listed with the FDA. We cannot assure you that the tax, once the moratorium sunsets, will not be extended to services such as ours in the future. The Affordable Care Act also mandates a reduction in payments for clinical laboratory services paid under the Medicare Clinical Laboratory Fee Schedule, or CLFS, of 1.75% through 2015 and a productivity adjustment to the CLFS. Moreover, under Protecting Access to Medicare Act, CMS will be required to set and make adjustments to the CLFS using market-based information that reflects the scope of prices paid across the laboratory industry. On October 1, 2015, CMS issued a proposed rule to implement PAMA that would require applicable laboratories, including the Company, to begin reporting their test-specific private payer payment amounts to CMS during the first quarter of 2016. CMS intends to use that private market data to calculate weighted median prices for each test (based on applicable CPT codes) that would represent the new CLFS rates beginning in 2017, subject to certain phase-in limits. For 2017-2019, a test price cannot be reduced by more than 10.0% per year; for 2020-2022, a test price cannot be reduced by more than 15.0% per year. Reporting and pricing will occur every three years, or annually with respect to certain types of tests, to update the CLFS thereafter.

Other significant measures contained in the Affordable Care Act includes, for example, coordination and promotion of research on comparative clinical effectiveness of different technologies and procedures, initiatives to revise Medicare payment methodologies, such as bundling of payments across the continuum of care by providers and physicians, and initiatives to promote quality indicators in payment methodologies. The Affordable Care Act also includes significant new fraud and abuse measures, including required disclosures by drug and device manufacturers and distributors of financial arrangements with physicians and teaching hospitals. In addition, the Health Care Reform Law establishes an Independent Payment Advisory Board, or IPAB, to reduce the per capita rate of growth in Medicare spending. The IPAB has broad discretion to propose policies to reduce expenditures, which may have a negative impact on payment rates for services. The IPAB proposals may impact payments for clinical laboratory services beginning in 2016. We are monitoring the impact of the Health Care Reform Law in order to enable us to determine the trends and changes that may be necessitated by the legislation that may potentially impact on our business over time.

## Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

In addition to the Affordable Care Act, various healthcare reform proposals have also emerged from federal and state governments. For example, in February 2012, Congress passed the Middle Class Tax Relief and Job Creation Act of 2012 which in part reduced the potential future cost-based increases to the Medicare Clinical Laboratory Fee Schedule by 2%. Overall the expected total fee cut to the CLFS for 2013 was 2.95% not including a further reduction of 2% from implementation of the automatic expense reductions (sequester) under the Budget Control Act of 2011 which went into effect for dates of service on or after April 1, 2013. Reductions made by the Congressional sequester are applied to total claims payments made. While these reductions did not result in a rebasing of the negotiated or established Medicare or Medicaid reimbursement rates, rebasing could occur as a result of future legislation. In 2015, the total fee cut to the CLFS was 0.25%.

On June 23, 2016, the CMS published a final rule implementing PAMA, which required establishment of a new Medicare reimbursement system for clinical lab tests paid under the CLFS, based on private payer rates, as reported to CMS. Although the new payment system was supposed to go into effect for tests furnished after January 1, 2017, the CMS rulemaking process was delayed, and the new rates will not be effective until January 1, 2018 pursuant to the final rule. Under the new system the Company must collect data on private payer rates and report the data to CMS every three years for most types of tests. The Company does not expect that the new reporting requirements will have a material impact on its business or results of operations. CMS will use the data reported by all applicable labs to calculate a weighted median of private payer rates for each test performed, and that weighted median will be the new Medicare rate. Rate reductions for existing tests under the new system

Table of Contents

will be phased in over six years. The public comment period on the preliminary private payor rate based CLFS payment amounts will close on October 23, 2017 after which CMS will make available final CY 2018 CLFS rates on the CMS website for a January 1, 2018 implementation. The Company is still assessing the full impact of the final rule, but has been preparing for it for some time.

We cannot be certain that these or future changes will not affect payment rates in the future. We also cannot predict whether future healthcare initiatives will be implemented at the federal or state level, or the effect any future legislation or regulation will have on us. The taxes imposed by the new federal legislation, cost reduction measures and the expansion in government's role in the U.S. healthcare industry may result in decreased profits to us, lower reimbursements by payers for our products or reduced medical procedure volumes, all of which may adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

**Healthcare plans have taken steps to control the utilization and reimbursement of healthcare services, including clinical test services.**

We also face efforts by non-governmental third-party payers, including healthcare plans, to reduce utilization and reimbursement for clinical testing services.

The healthcare industry has experienced a trend of consolidation among healthcare insurance plans, resulting in fewer but larger insurance plans with significant bargaining power to negotiate fee arrangements with healthcare providers, including clinical testing providers. These healthcare plans, and independent physician associations, may demand that clinical testing providers accept discounted fee structures or assume all or a portion of the financial risk associated with providing testing services to their members through capped payment arrangements. In addition, some healthcare plans have been willing to limit the PPO or POS laboratory network to only a single national laboratory to obtain improved fee-for-service pricing. There are also an increasing number of patients enrolling in consumer driven products and high deductible plans that involve greater patient cost-sharing.

The increased consolidation among healthcare plans also has increased the potential adverse impact of ceasing to be a contracted provider with any such insurer.

We expect continuing efforts to reduce reimbursements, to impose more stringent cost controls and to reduce utilization of clinical test services. These efforts, including future changes in third-party payer rules, practices and policies, or ceasing to be a contracted provider to a healthcare plan, may have a material adverse effect on our business.

**Government regulation of genetic research or testing may adversely affect the demand for our services and impair our business and operations.**

In addition to the regulatory framework governing healthcare, genetic research and testing has been the focus of public attention and regulatory scrutiny. From time to time, federal, state and/or local governments adopt regulations relating to the conduct of genetic research and genetic testing. In the future, these regulations could limit or restrict genetic research activities as well as genetic testing for research or clinical purposes. In addition, if such regulations are adopted, these regulations may be inconsistent with, or in conflict with, regulations adopted by



other government bodies. Regulations relating to genetic research activities could adversely affect our ability to conduct our research and development activities. Regulations restricting genetic testing could adversely affect our ability to market and sell our products and services. Accordingly, any regulations of this nature could increase the costs of our operations or restrict our ability to conduct our testing business and might adversely affect our operations and financial condition.

**Our operations may be adversely affected by the effects of extreme weather conditions or other interruptions in the timely transportation of specimens.**

We transport specimens from our North Carolina offices in the U.S. to our laboratory located in Melbourne, Australia. Our operations may be adversely impacted by extreme weather conditions or other interruptions in the timely transportation of such specimens or otherwise to provide our services, from time to time. The occurrence of any such event and/or a disruption to our operations as a result may harm our reputation and adversely impact our results of operations.

**Failure in our information technology systems could significantly increase testing turn-around times or impact on the billing processes or otherwise disrupt our operations.**

Our laboratory operations depend, in part, on the continued performance of our information technology systems. Our information technology systems are potentially vulnerable to physical or electronic break-ins, computer viruses and similar disruptions. Sustained system failures or interruption of our systems in our laboratory operations could disrupt our ability to process laboratory requisitions, perform testing, and provide test results in a timely manner and/or billing process. Breaches with respect to protected health information

Table of Contents

could result in violations of HIPAA and analogous state laws, and risk the imposition of significant fines and penalties. Failure of our information technology systems could adversely affect our reputation, business, profitability and financial condition.

**Breaches of network or information technology, natural disasters or terrorist attacks could have an adverse impact on our business**

Cyber-attacks or other breaches of information technology security, natural disasters, or acts of terrorism or war may result in hardware failure or disrupt our product testing or research and development activities. There has been a substantial increase in frequency of successful and unsuccessful cyber-attacks on companies in recent years. Such an event may result in our inability, or the inability of our collaborative partners, to operate the facilities to conduct and complete the necessary activities, which even if the event is for a limited period of time, may result in significant expenses and/ or significant damage or delay to our commercial or research activities. While we maintain insurance cover for some of these events, the potential liabilities associated with these events could exceed the cover we maintain. We are likely to be subject to attempts to breach the security of our networks and information technology infrastructure through cyber-attack, malware, computer viruses or other means of unauthorized access. To date however, we have not been subject to any cyber incidents which individually or in aggregate have resulted in a material impact to our operations or financial condition.

**Failure to demonstrate the clinical utility of our products could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.**

In order to assure adequate insurance coverage and favorable insurance reimbursement of our products, we have been required to demonstrate the clinical utility of our tests. Clinical utility which is the usefulness of a test for clinical practice (as contrasted with diagnostic accuracy, which is how well the test can determine the presence, absence, or risk of a specific disease) may well be the most significant limitation for the widespread acceptance of molecular diagnostic tools such as BREVA*Genplus*. These studies have required us to invest considerable financial and management resources without any assurance of favorable results. Successful studies are difficult to plan, execute and validate, because of the time involved and variables that are difficult to control and which can impact outcomes. If we are unable to demonstrate clinical utility, or if our data is deemed insufficient to validate utility, which are required for Medicare coverage, then we may face negative coverage decisions for our products. The resulting negative coverage decisions could have a material adverse effect on our financial conditions and results of operations.

With the change in our pricing and billing model effective April 1, 2017, to a direct patient self-pay model, this requirement has currently become redundant. We recognize, however that scientific papers are an essential marketing tool and that scientific and clinical data are key drivers in commercial adoption. We intend to explore opportunities to engage in further research collaborations to support clinical utility.

**Ethical and other concerns surrounding the use of genetic information may reduce the demand for our services.**

Public opinion regarding ethical issues related to the confidentiality and appropriate use of genetic testing may influence government authorities to call for limits on, or regulation of the use of, genetic testing. In addition, such authorities could prohibit testing for genetic predisposition to certain conditions, particularly for those that have no known cure. Furthermore, adverse publicity or public opinion relating to genetic research and testing, even in the absence of any governmental regulation, could reduce the potential markets for our services, which could materially and adversely affect our financial position.

We do not however undertake any activities in the contentious areas of cloning, stem cell research or other gene-altering areas. As such, many of the ethical issues that may be relevant to other participants in the genetics industry are not necessarily applicable to us.

**Risks associated with Out-licensing of our intellectual property**

The patenting of genes and issues surrounding access to genetic knowledge are the subjects of extensive and ongoing public debate in many countries. By way of example, the Australian Law Reform Commission has previously conducted two inquiries into the social uses of genetic information. The patents we hold over uses of non-coding DNA have broad scope and have also been the subject of debate and some criticism in the media. Individuals or organizations, in any one of the countries in which these patents have issued, could take legal action to seek their amendment, revocation or invalidation, something which has happened previously, on several occasions in various jurisdictions, though we have prevailed in all such cases.

Furthermore, any time that we initiate legal action against parties that infringe our patents we face a risk that the infringer will defend itself through a counter-claim of patent invalidity or other such claims. Subsequent legal action could potentially overturn, invalidate or limit the scope of our patents.

Table of Contents

Under the relevant Patent Acts in most of the countries in which our non-coding patents have issued, the relevant judicial system has rights to impose compulsory licensing. The relevant governments typically hold march-in rights by which they may unilaterally choose to exploit the technology. To the extent that the Company's non-coding technology is used in the conduct of research, we also face risks, uncertainty and controversy over the licensing of our technology to those conducting the research. Whether or not researchers should be exempted from obligations to take licenses to relevant patents was the subject of another government inquiry conducted by the Australian Council for Intellectual Property who recommended the creation of a research exemption.

**Item 4. Information on the Company**

**Item 4.A History and Development of the Company**

Originally incorporated under the laws of Western Australia on January 5, 1987 as Concord Mining N.L. the Company operated as a mining company. On August 13, 1991, we changed our name to Consolidated Victorian Gold Mines N.L. On December 2, 1991, we changed our name to Consolidated Victorian Mines N.L. On March 15, 1995, we changed our name to Duketon Goldfields N.L.

On October 15, 1999, the Company's corporate status was changed from a No Liability Company to a company limited by shares. On August 29, 2000, following the acquisition of Swiss company GeneType AG, we changed our name to Genetic Technologies Limited, which is our current name. At that time, the mining activities were phased out to focus on becoming a biotechnology company, following which our stock exchange listing was duly transferred from the mining board of the ASX to the industrial board and our shares were thereafter classified under the industry group Health and Biotechnology, completing our transformation from a mining company into a biotechnology company. Our current activities in biotechnology primarily concentrate on one clearly defined area of activity which is covered under Item 4.B Business Overview.

In October 2009, a new strategic direction was established to focus efforts in creating a portfolio of tests that would be aimed at assisting medical clinicians with cancer management. This would comprise tests that were created by the Company and in-licensed from third parties which would then be marketed by Genetic Technologies in the Asia-Pacific region.

On April 14, 2010, we announced that we had acquired certain assets from Perlegen Sciences, Inc. in California, with the main asset being the BREVA Gen breast cancer risk assessment test (BREVA Gen). In addition to the BREVA Gen test, we also acquired a suite of patents valid to 2022 which augment and extend our current non-coding patent portfolio. On June 28, 2010, we incorporated a wholly-owned subsidiary named Phenogen Sciences Inc. in the State of Delaware which commenced selling the BREVA Gen test in the U.S. marketplace in June 2011. In October 2014, the Company released its next generation breast cancer risk assessment test BREVA Gen<sup>plus</sup>®.

During 2014, the Directors considered an offer by Specialist Diagnostic Services Ltd (SDS), the wholly owned pathology subsidiary of Primary Health Care Ltd., to purchase the assets of the Australian Genetic testing business, which included Paternity, Forensics, Animal and Medical testing for the ANZ region. In September 2014, the Company signed a binding Sale and Purchase Agreement with SDS.

## Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

On November 19, 2014, the Company completed the sale of its Heritage Australian Genetics business to SDS.

As part of the Company's strategy to focus on the expansion of its cancer diagnostic franchise, we continue to evaluate opportunities to sell, out-license or co-develop other assets and technologies in which we have an interest, including our legacy non-coding assertion and licensing program.

In line with this strategy, during the current financial year;

- in November 2016, the Company executed an exclusive worldwide license agreement with The University of Melbourne, for the development and commercialization of a novel colorectal cancer (CRC) risk assessment test, providing the Company with an opportunity to enhance its pipeline of risk assessment products.
- In June 2017, the Company executed an investigator initiated Research Agreement with The Ohio State University, reflecting the growing awareness of the Company's expertise in SNP-based risk assessment.

Table of Contents

**Corporate Information**

Our registered office, headquarters and laboratory is located at 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria, 3065, Australia and our telephone number is +61 3 8412 7000. The offices of our U.S. subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc., are located at 9115 Harris Corners Parkway, Suite 320, Charlotte, North Carolina, 28269 U.S.A. The telephone number for the Phenogen Sciences office is (877) 992 7382. Our website address is [www.gtglabs.com](http://www.gtglabs.com). The information in our website is not incorporated by reference into this Annual Report and should not be considered as part of this Annual Report.

Our Australian Company Number (ACN) is 009 212 328. Our Australian Business Number (ABN) is 17 009 212 328. We operate pursuant to our constitution, the Australian *Corporations Act 2001*, the Listing Rules of the Australian Securities Exchange, the Marketplace Rules of NASDAQ and, where applicable, local, state and federal legislation in the countries in which we operate.

**Item 4.B Business Overview**

**Description of our Business**

Founded in 1989, Genetic Technologies Listed on the ASX (GTG) in 2000 and NASDAQ (GENE) in 2005, Genetic Technologies is today a molecular diagnostics company that offers predictive testing and assessment tools to help physicians proactively manage women's health. The Company's lead product, BREVAGen*plus*, is a clinically validated risk assessment test for non-hereditary breast cancer and is first in its class. BREVAGen*plus* improves upon the predictive power of the first generation BREVAGen test and is designed to facilitate better informed decisions about breast cancer screening and preventive treatment plans. BREVAGen*plus* expands the application of BREVAGen from Caucasian women to include African-Americans and Hispanics, and is directed towards women aged 35 years or above, who have not had breast cancer and have one or more risk factors for developing breast cancer.

The Company has successfully launched the first generation BREVAGen test across the U.S. via its U.S. subsidiary Phenogen Sciences Inc. and the addition of BREVAGen*plus*, launched in October 2014, significantly expands the applicable market. The Company markets BREVAGen*plus* to healthcare professionals in comprehensive breast health care and imaging centres, as well as to obstetricians/gynecologists (OBGYNs) and breast cancer risk assessment specialists (such as breast surgeons).

**The Genetic Testing Business**

Following the acquisition of Genetype AG in 1999 and the subsequent renaming to Genetic Technologies Limited, the Company focused on establishing a genetic testing business, which over the following decade saw it become the largest provider of paternity and related testing services in Australia. The Company's service testing laboratory in Melbourne became the leading non-Government genetic testing service provider in Australia. The genetic testing services of the Company expanded to include at certain times:

- *Medical testing*
- *Animal Testing*
- *Forensic Testing*
- *Plant Testing*

The acquisition of GeneType AG also provided the Company with ownership rights to a potentially significant portfolio of issued patents. During the intervening years, this portfolio has since been expanded by both organic growth and the acquisition of intellectual property assets from third parties. The patent portfolio is constantly reviewed to ensure that we maintain potentially important patents but at the same time keep costs to a minimum by no longer pursuing less commercially attractive and relevant intellectual property.

A strategic alliance with Myriad Genetics Inc. delivered to the Company exclusive rights in Australia and New Zealand to perform DNA testing for susceptibility to a range of cancers. In April 2003, we established our cancer susceptibility testing facility within our Australian laboratory. In June 2003, this facility was granted provisional accreditation by the National Association of Testing Authorities, Australia ( NATA ).

In November 2003, the Company joined the world-wide genetic testing network GENDIA as the sole reference laboratory for the network in Australia and New Zealand. GENDIA consists of more than 50 laboratories from around the world, each contributing expertise in their respective disciplines to create a network capable of providing more than 2,000 different genetic tests. This provided the Company with the ability to offer comprehensive testing services to its customer base in the Asia-Pacific region as well as increasing its exposure to other markets.

Table of Contents

In December 2009, Genetic Technologies negotiated an exclusive option to investigate the purchase of various assets from Perlegen Sciences, Inc. of Mountain View, California which included a breast cancer non-familial risk assessment test, BREVAGen . Those assets were subsequently purchased by the Company in April 2010. Work then began on validating the test in the Company's Australian laboratory as well as initiating the process for obtaining CLIA certification which would enable the Company to undertake the testing of samples received from the U.S. market. By July 2010, a new U.S. subsidiary named Phenogen Sciences Inc. had been incorporated by the Company in Delaware to market and distribute the BREVAGen test across mainland U.S.A.

On September 15, 2014 we announced plans to restructure and realign our group activities, in order to focus our strategy on the U.S. molecular diagnostics market and the commercialisation of our lead breast cancer risk test BREVAGen through our U.S. subsidiary Phenogen Sciences, Inc. In October 2014, we announced the U.S. release of BREVAGen*plus*, an easy-to-use predictive risk test for the millions of women at risk of developing sporadic, or non-hereditary, breast cancer, representing a marked enhancement in accuracy and broader patient applicability, over our first generation BREVAGen product. We also made a pivotal change of sales and marketing emphasis toward large comprehensive breast treatment and imaging centers, which are more complex entities with a longer sales cycle, but higher potential.

As part of this realignment, on November 19, 2014 we completed the sale of our Heritage Australian genetics business to Specialist Diagnostic Services Ltd. As part of the Company's strategy to focus on the expansion of its cancer diagnostic franchise, we continue to evaluate opportunities to sell, out-license or co-develop other assets and technologies in which we have an interest, including our legacy non-coding assertion and licensing program.

**BREVAGen*plus* is a State-of-the-Art Breast Cancer Risk Assessment Test designed to enable a more personalized breast cancer risk assessment in a greater number of women**

The identification, in 2007, of a number of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), each with an associated small relative risk of breast cancer, led to the development of the first commercially available genetic risk test for sporadic breast cancer, BREVAGen(TM). The Company launched the product, in the U.S. in June 2011. In October 2014, Genetic Technologies released its next generation breast cancer risk assessment test, BREVAGen*plus*. This new version of the test incorporates a 10-fold expanded panel of genetic markers (SNPs), known to be associated with the development of sporadic breast cancer, providing an increase in predictive power relative to its first-generation predecessor test. In addition, the new test is clinically validated in a broader population of women including, African American and Hispanic women. This increases the applicable market beyond the Caucasian only indication of the first generation test, and simplifies the marketing process in medical clinics and breast health centres in the U.S.

The expanded panel of SNPs incorporated into BREVAGen*plus* were identified from multiple large-scale genome-wide association studies and subsequently tested in case-control studies utilising specific Caucasian, African American and Hispanic patient samples.

BREVAGen*plus* is a first-in-class, clinically validated, predictive risk test for sporadic breast cancer which examines a woman's clinical risk factors, combined with seventy seven scientifically validated genetic biomarkers (SNPs), to allow for more personalised breast cancer risk assessment and risk management.



Physicians worldwide look largely to family history of breast cancer as an indication of risk in patients for developing this disease. However, 85% of women who develop breast cancer have little or no family history of developing the disease and BREVA*Genplus* is designed to help elucidate risk in this group of women.

Targeted towards women over the age of 35 who have little or no family history of breast cancer but harbor one or more known clinical risk factors such as early menstruation, late childbirth, late menopause, a history of atypical or benign breast biopsies, BREVA*Genplus* provides a more accurate tool for assessing a woman's personal risk of developing breast cancer.

In addition, women designated as having dense breasts upon mammographic evaluation are recognized as being at elevated risk of developing breast cancer, which makes these patients potential candidates for the BREVA*Genplus* test. Several U.S. States have enacted legislation, which mandates that breast density be documented on mammogram reports, and encourages physicians to discuss risk profiles and risk reduction strategies with these patients. Recent scientific evidence indicates that BREVA*Genplus* may help to properly identify the high risk women in this category. It is expected that more U.S. jurisdictions will adopt similar legislation in the coming years, increasing awareness of the correlation between dense breast and breast cancer risk amongst healthcare providers, patients and health insurance payers.

In April 2011, the Company announced that it had gained certification of its Australian laboratory under the U.S. Clinical Laboratories Improvements Amendments, as regulated by the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid in Baltimore, Maryland. This certification, which enables the Company to accept and test samples from U.S. residents, was the culmination of preparations required

Table of Contents

for the U.S. launch of the Company's BREVAGen test which occurred in June 2011. Phenogen Sciences has since established an office in Charlotte, North Carolina.

In August 2012, the Company announced that it had received European CE Mark approval for BREVAGen, which will allow BREVAGen to be sold in the EU and other countries that recognize the CE Mark.

During the first half of the 2013 financial year, the Company announced that it had received licensure to sell BREVAGen into the states of California, Maryland, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island and Florida, bringing the total number of U.S. states in which the BREVAGen test can be sold to 49 of the 50 U.S. states. In July 2013, the Company was inspected by a representative of the New York State Department of Health, Clinical Laboratory Evaluation Program (CLEP). The Company's laboratory received an inspection result with no deficiencies reported and, on August 30, 2013, the Company announced that it had received its Clinical Laboratory Permit (CLEP) from the New York State Department of Health. This permit, which allows the Company to offer the BREVAGen test to residents of New York State, completed the final out-of-state licensure allowing the Company to provide testing services to all 50 U.S. states.

From its headquarters in Melbourne, Victoria, the Company's laboratory holds a number of accreditations including:

- The Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA) license required for all laboratories offering testing the U.S.;
- The Clinical Laboratory Evaluation Program (CLEP) license, an additional certification required to offer tests in New York State;
- A Medical Device Establishment License (MDEL) required for Canada;
- The BREVAGen<sup>plus</sup>® test is CE marked for sale in Europe;

Physicians who order clinical tests for their patients represent the primary sources of our testing volume. Fees invoiced to patients and third parties are based on our fee schedule, which may be subject to limitations imposed by third-party payers. The clinical laboratory industry is highly regulated and subject to significant and changing Federal and state laws and regulations. These laws and regulations affect key aspects of our business, including licensure and operations, billing and payment for laboratory services, sales and marketing interactions with ordering physicians, security and confidentiality of health information, and environmental and occupational safety. Oversight by government officials includes regular inspections and audits. We seek to and believe that we do conduct our business in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations.

The United States Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988, or CLIA, extends Federal licensing requirements to all clinical laboratories (regardless of the location, size or type of laboratory), including those operated by physicians in their offices, based on the complexity of the tests they perform. CLIA also establishes a stringent proficiency testing program for laboratories and includes substantial sanctions, such as suspension, revocation or limitation of a laboratory's CLIA certificate (which is necessary to conduct business), and significant fines and/or criminal penalties.

CLIA, and its implementing regulations, includes quality standards (establishing Federal quality standards for all clinical laboratories); application and user fee requirements; and enforcement procedures. The quality standard regulations establish varying levels of regulatory scrutiny depending upon the complexity of testing performed. The tests on samples provided through our products are processed at our laboratory in Melbourne, Australia. Our laboratory completed its first CLIA inspection under CLIA guidelines and received its certificate of compliance effective November 17, 2011. A re-certification from CMS i.e. paper survey, was performed in November 2013 and another on-site re-certification followed up in February 2016. A further re-certification via a paper survey is scheduled to be conducted by CMS in November 2017. Furthermore, our laboratory completed its first CLEP inspection under the NYS DOH CLEP guidelines and received its certificate of compliance effective August 30, 2013. Since the initial survey, the laboratory has been successful in submitting documents via the NYS eCLEP Health Commerce System for each subsequent year to date. Although no firm date has been provided, the laboratory is expecting an on-site visit in the near future.

We believe the Company is in compliance with all applicable federal and state laboratory requirements. Under CLIA, the company remains subject to state and local laboratory regulations. CLIA provides that a state may adopt laboratory regulations that are more stringent than those under federal law, and some states require additional personnel qualifications, quality control, record maintenance and other requirements.

BREVA Gen and BREVA Gen *plus* are laboratory developed tests, or LDTs. The federal Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, has regulatory responsibility over, among other areas, instruments, test kits, reagents and other medical devices used by clinical laboratories to perform diagnostic testing. CLIA-certified laboratories, such as ours, frequently develop internal testing procedures to provide diagnostic results to customers. These tests are referred to as laboratory developed tests, or LDTs. LDTs are subject to CMS

Table of Contents

oversight through its enforcement of CLIA. The FDA has also claimed regulatory authority over all LDTs, but indicates that it has exercised enforcement discretion with regard to most LDTs offered by high complexity CLIA-certified laboratories, and has not subjected these tests to the panoply of FDA rules and regulations governing medical devices. However, the FDA has stated that it has been considering changes in the way it believes that laboratories ought to be allowed to offer these LDTs, and during 2010 publicly announced that it would be exercising regulatory authority over LDTs, using a risk-based approach that will direct more resources to tests with the highest risk of injury. In September 2014, the FDA announced its framework and timetable for implementing this guidance.

*Test samples received since launch*

Since launching its BREVAGen test in the U.S. market in July 2011, followed by the U.S. release of BREVAGen*plus*, in October 2014, the number of test samples received up to balance date June 30 2017, was 10,637 tests.

During the financial year ended June 30, 2012, the Company generated the first sales of its BREVAGen test. Whilst not material to the overall result, in accordance with revenue recognition principles, due to the relatively limited numbers of tests sold in that first year of launch, the income generated from these sales was recorded on a cash basis. Effective January 1, 2013, significant changes in the US reimbursement system have impacted (positively) on the amounts the Company has since received for the BREVAGen tests it performs. As of June 2014, the Company had enough historical data to use to enable it to determine a reliable estimate of the amount of revenue expected to be received. Accordingly the Group recognizes the revenue on the BREVAGen test on an accruals basis.

*Further expansion of the Company's credentialing program*

Credentialing with Preferred Provider Organization ( PPOs ) Networks allows for expedited claim adjudication as in-network . A PPO is a managed care organization of medical doctors, hospitals and other health care providers which has covenanted with insurers or third-party administrators to provide health care, at reduced rates, to the clients of the respective insurer or administrator. Credentialing is a process whereby provider organizations such as physicians, care facilities and ancillary providers (including testing service providers such as Phenogen Sciences) contract directly with the PPO. Contracts with PPOs are fundamental to having claims for the BREVAGen test adjudicated as in-network .

Credentialing contracts have been executed between the Company and InterWest Health, FedMed Inc., MultiPlan Network, Three Rivers Provider Network, Prime Health Services, National Preferred Provider Network / PlanCare America / Ohio Preferred Provider Network LLC (NPPN / OPPN), Galaxy Health Network and Fortified Provider Network.

Historically, the positive impact of this activity was reflected in the fact that the average reimbursement received in respect of claims that were adjudicated as in-network was significantly higher than the amounts received in respect of claims that were adjudicated as out-of-network , with the time taken to collect the funds also being materially shorter.

Ongoing challenges experienced with the traditional reimbursement system resulted in the Company transitioning to a patient self-pay program on April 1, 2017 (see Reimbursement below). This change currently eliminates the need for credentialing and the role of the PPOs for new test samples received subsequent to this date.

*Reimbursement*

Up until the end of the 2012 calendar year, insurance claims for BREVAGen were submitted using the so-called code stack of CPT methodology codes. Reimbursement under this regime was positive, with a low percentage of denials and appeals. However, effective January, 1 2013, the AMA removed the code stack claim process, requiring tests without a specific CPT code to be claimed via an Unlisted or Miscellaneous Code .

As a result of the above changes the Company up to April 1, 2017 used a miscellaneous code when submitting claims for reimbursement from insurers. As part of this transition, the list price for the BREVAGen test was increased to enable the Company to receive payment for aspects of the test that were not previously available under the code stack. Importantly, notwithstanding this, the Company did not seek to increase the maximum out-of-pocket amount that a given patient is required to pay for a BREVAGen<sup>plus</sup> test under its Patient Protection Program.

Though the Company's reimbursement per test (including write-offs and denials for non-coverage) has increased by more than 30%, the use of a miscellaneous code requires more administration and time by the Insurance Company to adjudicate and process the claim, thus increasing the time taken to receive reimbursement.

Table of Contents

These ongoing reimbursement challenges through the use of a miscellaneous CPT code, as well as overall pressure on the U.S. health care market to lower cost and maximize efficiency were major factors in the Company's decision to transition from a traditional reimbursement system through insurance providers to a direct patient self-pay program from April 1, 2017. Converting to a direct pay relationship with patients is aimed at providing economic and process certainty to the transaction for the healthcare provider and the patient. The change is expected to eliminate ongoing reimbursement issues being experienced, such as low levels of reimbursement, prolonged payment time, patient confusion around eligibility and financial responsibility and poor coverage.

*Clinical utility studies and peer-review publications to drive reimbursement outcome*

With effect from April 1, 2017, the Company transitioned from a traditional reimbursement system through insurance providers, to a direct patient self-pay program. This shift has implications for the series of clinical utility studies, the first two of three which had commenced in the fourth quarter of 2016, that were designed as a means to achieve reimbursement coverage through the private insurers. With the change in the pricing model, that requirement has become redundant.

We recognize, however that scientific papers are an essential marketing tool and that scientific and clinical data are key drivers to help strengthen our commercial position. We intend to explore opportunities to engage in further research collaborations to support clinical utility.

Physicians and the major breast health centres seek multiple points of confirmation that the medical device works as intended and leads to a meaningful improvement in women's health. Therefore, the more papers that are published on BREVA*Genplus*, profiling its performance characteristics including clinical validity and utility, the more likely physicians will be to use the test

The Company had previously conducted multiple scientific studies to develop and validate the first generation BREVA*Gen* test as well as created two health economic models to demonstrate potential cost savings and health benefits associated with the BREVA*Gen* test. Importantly, due to the nature of the technology and the specific improvements incorporated in BREVA*Genplus*, the research undertaken and published based on the original version of the test remains applicable to the new and improved BREVA*Genplus* test.

Following is a list of peer-reviewed publications on the BREVA*Gen* test, to date:

- 1) **Cost-effectiveness of a Genetic Test for Breast Cancer Risk** . *Cancer Prevention Research*. 2013 Dec; 6(12):1328-36.
  
- 2) **Economic Evaluation of Using a Genetic Test to Direct Breast Cancer Chemoprevention in White Women with a Previous Breast Biopsy** . *Applied Health Economics and Health Policy*. 2014 Apr; 12(2):203-17.

- 3) **Using SNP genotypes to improve the discrimination of a simple breast cancer risk prediction model** . Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2013 Jun; 139(3):887-96.
- 4) **Assessment of clinical validity of a breast cancer risk model combining genetic and clinical information** . J Natl Cancer Inst. 2010 Nov 3; 102(21):1618-27.
- 5) **SNP s and Breast cancer risk prediction for African-American and Hispanic women.** Breast Cancer Research & Treatment. 2015 Dec; 4(3): 583-89.
- 6) **Breast cancer risk prediction based on clinical models and 77 independent risk-associated SNPs in women aged under 50 years: Australian Breast Cancer Family Registry** Cancer, Epidemiology, Biomarkers and Prevention. 2016 Feb; 25(2): 359-65.
- 7) **Prediction of breast cancer risk based on profiling with common genetic variants** . J Natl Cancer Inst. 2015; 107(5):doi:10.1093/jnci/djv036. doi: 10.1093/jnci/djv036.

And supporting presentations:

- 1) Jacoby E, DiCicco, Allman R. (2013). Impact of genomics on the assessment and management of breast cancer risk in a women 's healthcare clinic. Proceedings of the National Consortium of Breast Centers March 2013.
- 2) Fohlse HJ, Dinh TA, Allman R. (2013). Genetic testing for breast cancer risk estimation A cost-effectiveness analysis. Presented at The California Pacific Medical Centre Breast Cancer Risk Assessment Workshop June 2013.
- 3) Fohlse HJ, Dinh TA, Allman R. (2013). Genetic testing for breast cancer risk estimation A cost-effectiveness analysis. Presented at the San Antonio Breast Cancer Symposium December 2013.
- 4) Allman R, Dite GS, Hopper JL. (2015). Should women with a projected 5-year risk of developing breast cancer of 1.4% or higher be offered pharmacologic risk reduction? World Congress on Controversies in Breast Cancer: 22-24 October 2015.

Table of Contents

5) Dite GS, Allman R, Hopper JL (2014). Value of adding Single-Nucleotide Polymorphism panel markers to phenotypic algorithms of Breast Cancer risk. Presented at the San Antonio Breast Cancer Symposium December 2014.

Although there is strong scientific data behind BREVAGenplus, there is always a need for further clinical data to show clinical efficacy and utility of the product. As such, in June 2017, we have engaged in a research collaboration with The Ohio State University which is conducting a clinical trial surrounding the efficacy of polygenic risk in patient management of at-risk women. Our medical affairs team continues to engage with other influential medical centres across the U.S. in order to facilitate further research collaborations that will continue to support the utility of polygenic risk in clinical practice.

***Research & Development Projects***

During the year ended June 30, 2017, Genetic Technologies supported the following research programs, details of which have been provided below;

- BREVAGenplus
- Colorectal Cancer Risk Assessment Test
- Research collaboration with The Ohio State University

In previous years, other projects, which have since been terminated or otherwise commercialized, have also been supported by the Company. The Company is constantly seeking new opportunities. Historically some projects have arisen from new inventions made by the Company while some have been made by others who have approached the Company seeking collaboration and support for their activities.

By its very nature, research is unpredictable and involves a considerable element of risk. Such risks may relate to scientific concepts, the implementation of the science, the protection of any inventions made and the success or otherwise in persuading others to respect the intellectual property acquired or created by the Company. Specifically, patents filed may not issue or may later be challenged by others. Even if patents issue, the methods described may, with time, be superseded by alternative methods which may prove to be commercially more attractive. Even if patents issue and the methods developed are successfully reduced to practice and can be shown to be commercially relevant, there is still no assurance that other parties will respect the patents or will take licenses to use the intellectual property. In such circumstances, it is possible that legal action will be necessary to enforce the Company's rights. Such action, in turn, raises a new series of risks including potentially significant legal costs and uncertain outcomes.

To the extent that delays are encountered in concluding the research projects, additional costs may be incurred. Further, the projected revenues from the projects may also be deferred, potentially impacting on the Company's liquidity. In such cases, the Company may seek to partner with outside parties, who will contribute to the costs of research in return for an interest in the project, or the Company may seek to raise additional working capital from the Market. In a worst case scenario, the projects may well be closed down with no valuable intellectual property having



been created for the Company.

### **BREVA*Genplus*® Project**

In June 2011, the Company launched the first iteration of the breast cancer risk assessment test; BREVA*Gen* . In October 2014, Genetic Technologies released its next-generation breast cancer risk assessment test, BREVA*Genplus*. This new version of the test incorporates a 10-fold expanded panel of genetic markers (SNPs), known to be associated with the development of sporadic breast cancer, providing an increase in predictive power relative to its first-generation predecessor test. In addition, the new test has been studied in a broader population of women including, African American and Hispanic women. This increases the applicable market beyond the Caucasian only application of the first generation test, and simplifies the marketing process in medical clinics and breast health centres in the U.S. The expanded panel of SNPs incorporated into BREVA*Genplus* were identified from multiple large-scale genome-wide association studies and subsequently tested in case-control studies utilising specific Caucasian, African American and Hispanic patient samples.

Further modifications to BREVA*Genplus* were implemented in December 2016. Changes included a simplification of the clinical risk questionnaire, utilized in BREVA*Genplus*, from the seven questions of the Gail Model to just two questions: Age and Any First Degree Relatives. Additionally, test results are now reported as a 5-year Absolute Risk of Developing Breast Cancer. This approach is modelled on that of Mavaddat et al (2015) 107(5): djv036 and provides multiple product benefits. It simplifies the data-input requirement by the physician, aligns the product more firmly with U.S. clinical guidelines, in particular, the United States Preventative Services Task Force (USPSTF) recommendation statement on chemoprevention of breast cancer, and automatically strengthens the validation data by tying the test to a multinational study of approximately 80,000 women

Table of Contents

**Colorectal Cancer (CRC) risk assessment test Project**

On November 29, 2016, Genetic Technologies announced the signing of an exclusive worldwide license agreement with The University of Melbourne for the development and commercialization of a novel colorectal cancer (CRC) risk assessment test.

The core technology behind this test was developed by a research team at the University's Centre for Epidemiology and Biostatistics, with results from preliminary modelling studies first published online in *Future Oncology* on 1 February 2016, in a Paper entitled "Quantifying the utility of single nucleotide polymorphisms to guide colorectal cancer screening," 2016 Feb; 12(4), 503-13. This simulated case-control study of 1 million patients indicated that a panel of 45 known susceptibility SNPs can stratify the population into clinically useful CRC risk categories. In practice, the technology could be used to identify people at high risk for CRC who should be subjected to intensive screening, ultimately reducing the risk of occurrence and death from the disease. Those identified as low risk of CRC can be spared expensive and invasive screening, thereby preventing adverse events and unjustified expenses.

A scientific validation study supporting this work has been completed, and a report of the research program progress has been delivered to the Company. Whilst the terms of the Agreement are confidential, these events represent an important first milestone in the development of a new test as the Company seeks to diversify its product pipeline and become a key player in the SNP-based cancer risk assessment landscape.

The fundamental technology is similar to the *BREVA Genplus* test and is expected to fit synergistically into the Company's existing infrastructure and processes.

**Research Collaboration with The Ohio State University**

On June 15, 2017 the Company executed a Clinical Study Agreement with The Ohio State University, Technology Commercialization Office and Division of Human Genetics. This is an investigator-initiated study in which Genetic Technologies was approached to be the collaborating partner, reflecting the growing awareness of the Company's expertise in SNP-based risk assessment.

The terms and conditions of the Agreement are confidential; however Genetic Technologies will supply novel SNP-based genotyping for a clinical research study, through its CLIA laboratory facility, on a fee for service basis. The Company will be responsible for the development and validation of the new assay, although the fundamental technology is similar to the *BREVA Genplus* test and will fit synergistically into the Company's existing laboratory infrastructure and processes. Importantly, if the first phase of the study is successful, several other major genetics centres in the U.S. have expressed an interest in joining the study.

This collaborative study provides two tangible benefits for the Company:

- (i) engagement and collaboration with high profile cancer genetics researchers in the U.S. who are at the forefront of risk assessment research; and
  
- (ii) the resulting data can be used to inform the design of future pipeline products

### **Historical Research Projects**

Following a significant corporate restructure undertaken during the 2015 fiscal year, a strategic decision was made to focus the Company on the US diagnostics market and all historical research projects were ceased.

### ***Competition***

The medical diagnostics and biotechnology industries is subject to intense competition. As more information regarding cancer genomics and personalized medicine becomes available to the public, we anticipate that more products aimed at identifying cancer risk will be developed and that these products may compete with ours. However, the use of Single Nucleotide Polymorphisms (SNPs), for disease risk prediction is still a relatively new field of medicine.

Until recently, there have been no active direct competitors marketing an assay similar to that of BREVAGEN<sup>plus</sup> in the sporadic breast cancer risk assessment space. Effective August 31, 2017, Myriad Genetic Laboratories Inc. announced that it will market a new breast cancer risk-prediction tool, which according to our early understanding will be a direct competitor for BREVAGEN<sup>plus</sup>. It is however, at the date of this report, too early to determine the specific nature of the test when compared to BREVAGEN<sup>plus</sup>.

Table of Contents

In recent years, a number of other organizations, including deCODE (Iceland), 23andMe, Intergenetics, and Navigenics (subsequently acquired by Life Technologies now ThermoFisher) have attempted to commercialize SNP-based genetic tests, to both physicians and consumers, to assess sporadic breast cancer risk in relevant patient populations. But either due to a lack of adequate and compelling scientific validation, and/or sufficient commercial impetus and capability, these efforts have led to lackluster market adoption, resulting in either the dissolution of these businesses or a marked change in their strategy and ultimate competitive posture to genuinely challenge the efforts of the Company to commercialize and grow its BREVAGEN*plus* franchise. New entrants that we are aware of that are in early stages of product development include Counsyl Inc. in the U.S.

Nonetheless, there are a number of academic centers and affiliated research and development bodies, in the U.S and in Europe, that are reportedly exploring the validity and clinical viability of SNP-based commercial tests in the clinical setting, but it is unclear to what extent these entities currently represent a direct or indirect potential competitive liability to the Company. A number of established, mature laboratory services companies, such as Ambry Genetics, and Laboratory Corporation of America, among others, have the demonstrable product development, marketing skill and resources to enter into this market for sporadic breast cancer risk assessment. Many of these larger potential competitors have already established name and brand recognition and more extensive collaborative relationships, but again, it is unclear to what extent these potential competitive threats could manifest in the near-to-long term.

The Company continues to invest in proprietary, differentiating features of its BREVAGEN*plus* test offering to diminish any prospective efforts of a potential competitor, be they an established commercial laboratory provider, a research/academic test development or laboratory services entity. Therefore, any imminent bona fide risk that any one of these entities represents to the continued success and growth of the Company's BREVAGEN*plus* commercialization efforts and market-leading position in this area is not clear.

The Company's competitive position in the genetic testing area is based upon, amongst other things, our ability to:

- maintain first to market advantage;
  
- continue to strengthen and maintain scientific credibility through the process of obtaining scientific validation and undertaken further clinical trials supported by Peer-reviewed publication in medical journals;
  
- create and maintain scientifically-advanced technology and offer proprietary products and services
  
- continue to strengthen and improve the messaging and the importance and value of the breast cancer information that BREVAGEN*plus* provides to Physicians
  
- attract and retain qualified personnel;

- obtain patent or other protection for our products and services;
- obtain required government approvals and other accreditations on a timely basis; and
- successfully market our products and services.

If we are not successful in meeting these goals, our business could be adversely affected. Similarly, our competitors may succeed in developing technologies, products or services that are more effective than any that we are developing or that would render our technology and services obsolete, noncompetitive or uneconomical.

#### **Licensing**

#### **Non-Coding Assertion Program**

Our out-licensing business principally covers two families of non-coding DNA patents. As we are the sole owners of these patents there is, by definition, no direct competition in this activity. However, to some degree, there are alternate technologies in the market place which can be used to perform genetic analysis and genomic mapping and so in this regard we do face indirect competition and a potential risk of technological obsolescence. A risk of patent invalidation always exists with the possibility of the discovery of previously unknown prior art, as well as the risk of patent re-examination. Apart from these risks, the aging and expiry of our non-coding family of patents remains, and thus our ability to generate future license revenues from these particular patents may be

Table of Contents

restricted. It is anticipated that, over time however, licensing of additional patents filed by the Company in other areas of genetics and our other research projects may replace revenues currently generated from the licensing of these non-coding patents.

During the year ended June 30, 2009, we successfully prevailed in legal proceedings with respect to a Nullity Action in the German Patent Court regarding the equivalent to U.S. Patent No. 5,612,179 (the 179 patent ). We subsequently responded to questions raised by the U.S. Patents and Trademarks Office ( USPTO ) in relation to a Request for Re-examination of seven of the thirty six claims contained in 179 patent and, on May 10, 2010, we announced that we had received formal notification from the USPTO that it had upheld, without amendment, all of the claims which formed the basis of the re-examination action of the Company s core non-coding DNA patent.

On July 9, 2012, the Company announced that it had received formal notification from the USPTO that it had received and granted a request for a second *ex parte* re-examination of claims 1-18 and 26-32 of the 179 patent brought by Merial LLC of Duluth, Georgia ( Merial ). Requesting re-examination is a common strategy employed by defendants in patent infringement proceedings and, as such, it is not unexpected from Merial who is currently a defendant in the action originally brought by the Company in the U.S. District Court for the District of Colorado for infringement of the 179 patent. On March 15, 2013, the Company announced that the USPTO had issued an action reaffirming the validity of certain claims contained in the Company s 179 patent. In its formal notification to the Company, the USPTO stated that claims 1-18 and 26-32 of the 179 patent are confirmed and claims 19-25 and 33-36 are not reexamined .

On April 19, 2013, the Company advised that the USPTO had received a third request for an *ex parte* re-examination of the 179 patent, again from Merial, and that the request had been granted. As was the case in all previous challenges, GTG actively defended this matter and had the patent upheld. On September 30, 2013, the Company announced that it had received an *Ex-Parte Re-examination Certificate* once again confirming the patentability of claims 1-18 and 26-32 of the 179 patent. However, the Company also announced that Merial filed yet another (its third) request with the USPTO for re-examination of the 179 patent. This request for re-examination was once again, defended by the Company and again upheld with all claims intact as announced on February 12, 2014.

As a further result of our assertion program in the US, three independent but similar motions to dismiss have been brought by defendants in our assertion program. In each case, motions to dismiss were filed arguing the patents were invalid because they covered natural phenomenon or laws of nature and thus not entitled to patent protection. Again the Company actively defended these actions and prevailed in two cases that had been heard as announced by the Company on March 12, 2014 and August 26, 2014.

On October 30, 2014, Judge Stark issued a Memorandum Opinion finding Claim 1 of the Company s foundation 179 patent ineligible and granted that Motion to Dismiss. Legal Counsel has now prepared an appeal to the decision in the Federal Circuit.

On December 7, 2015, Genetic Technologies argued before the Federal Circuit Court of Appeals in Washington DC that Claim 1 of the Company s foundation 179 patent is patent eligible under the standards set forth in the Mayo/Alice line of Supreme Court cases, and that Judge Stark s decision to grant motions to dismiss finding Claim 1 patent ineligible should be reversed.

On April 8, 2016, the Federal Circuit affirmed the District Court and found that Claim 1 of the Company s 179 patent is patent-ineligible under 35 U.S.C. § 101.

On October 3, 2016, the Company was advised by its U.S. based attorney, Sheridan Ross, that the Supreme Court has declined to hear the Company's appeal. The matter is now closed.

#### **Environmental Regulations**

The Company's operations are subject to environmental regulations under Australian State legislation. In particular, the Company is subject to the requirements of the *Environment Protection Act 1993*. A license has been obtained under this Act to produce listed waste.

#### **Item 4.C Corporate Structure**

The diagram below shows the corporate structure of the Genetic Technologies group as of the date of this Annual Report:

Table of Contents

Genetic Technologies is the holding company of the Group and is listed on the Australian Securities Exchange, under the code GTG and, via its ADRs, on the NASDAQ Capital Market, under the ticker symbol GENE.

At June 30, 2017, the dormant subsidiary GeneType Ag was placed into members voluntary liquidation.

**Item 4.D** **Property, Plant and Equipment**

As at date of this Report, the Company has executed two leases in respect of premises occupied by the Group.

Fitzroy, Victoria

Genetic Technologies Limited rents the offices and laboratory premises which are located at 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria, Australia (an inner suburb of Melbourne) from Crude Pty. Ltd. The three year lease is due to expire on August 31, 2018. The anticipated total rental charge in respect of the year ending June 30, 2018 is approximately \$212,805. Genetic Technologies Limited does not have an option to purchase the leased premises at the expiry of the lease period.

Charlotte, North Carolina



Phenogen Sciences Inc., a wholly-owned subsidiary of Genetic Technologies Limited, rents office premises which are located at 9115 Harris Corners Parkway, Suite 320, Charlotte, North Carolina, USA from New Boston Harris Corners LLC. This lease will expire on October 31, 2017. At the date of this report, the Company is in the process of renegotiating a further lease period.. The anticipated total rental charge in respect of the year ending June 30, 2018, without taking into account an as yet unknown lease extension, is approximately USD 11,672. Phenogen Sciences Inc. does not have an option to purchase the leased premises at the expiry of the lease period.

## **Item 5. Operating and Financial Review and Prospects**

You should read the following discussion and analysis in conjunction with Item 3.A Selected Financial Data and our financial statements, the notes to the financial statements and other financial information appearing elsewhere in this Annual Report. In addition to historical information, the following discussion and other parts of this Annual Report contain forward-looking statements that reflect our plans, estimates, intentions, expectations and beliefs. Our actual results could differ materially from those discussed in the forward-looking statements. See the Risk Factors section of Item 3 and other forward-looking statements in this Annual Report for a discussion of some, but not all, factors that could cause or contribute to such differences.

### **Item 5.A Operating Results**

#### **Overview**

Founded in 1989, Genetic Technologies is an established Australian-based molecular diagnostics company that offers predictive

Table of Contents

genetic testing and risk assessment tools, with a current focus on women's health. During the year ended June 30, 2015 the Company divested its interest in other genetic testing services, which up until then together with licensing of non-coding technology had provided the main source of income to fund operations, to concentrate on the principal activity of the provision of molecular risk assessment for cancer.

The operating result for the year ended June 30, 2017 is directly reflective of the Company's concentrated focus on the expansion of its genetic testing business, with emphasis on the sale and distribution of the BREVA*Genplus*® breast cancer risk test in the U.S. through its wholly-owned U.S. subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc.

Since inception up to June 30, 2017, we have incurred \$117,848,074 in accumulated losses. Our losses have resulted principally from costs incurred in research and development, general and administrative and sales and marketing costs associated with our operations. Refer to the Consolidated Statements of Operations in Item 18.

During the 2017 financial year, Genetic Technologies Limited and its subsidiaries generated consolidated gross revenues from continuing operations, excluding other income, of approximately \$0.5 million, a decrease from \$0.8 million in 2016 and \$ 2.0 million in 2015. The comparisons reflect the impact of the substantial restructuring changes that took place during 2015, as well as the slow growth rates being experienced in the market adoption of the BREVA*Genplus* breast cancer risk assessment test in the U.S.

**Fiscal year**

As an Australian company, our fiscal, or financial, year ends on June 30 each year. We produce audited consolidated accounts at the end of June each year and provide reviewed half-yearly accounts for the periods ending on December 31 each year, both of which are prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards ( IFRS ) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.

**Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

In respect of the year ended June 30, 2017, the Group has assessed all new accounting standards mandatory for adoption during the current year, noting no new standards which would have a material effect on the disclosure in these financial statements. There has been no effect on the profit and loss or the financial position of the Group. Certain new accounting standards and interpretations have been published that are not mandatory for June 30, 2017 reporting periods. The Group's and the parent entity's assessment of the impact of these new standards and interpretations is set out in Note 2(b) of the attached financial statements.

**Critical Accounting Policies**

The accounting policies which are applicable to the Group and the parent entity are set out in Notes 2(c) to 2(y) of the attached financial statements.

**Comparison of the year ended June 30, 2017 to the year ended June 30, 2016**

**Revenues from operations**

The Group's primary focus during 2017 was aimed at achieving market acceptance and physician adoption of the BREVAGenplus® breast cancer risk assessment test in the U.S. through its wholly owned U.S. subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc. This strategy resulted in the implementation of several modifications to the BREVAGenplus® test as well as the transition from a traditional reimbursement system through insurance providers to a direct patient self-pay program in an effort to simplify the BREVAGenplus® billing and collection policy. An enhanced medical affairs presence together with a refined marketing message, with a focus on health care provider education have been key elements in the drive to achieve this market acceptance and adoption.

During the 2017 financial year, Genetic Technologies Limited and its subsidiaries generated consolidated gross revenues from continuing operations, excluding other revenue, of \$518,506 compared to \$824,586 in the preceding year. The overall decline of \$306,080 is as a result of a \$191,661 reduction in previously accrued BREVAGen™ and BREVAGenplus revenues, driven by ongoing reduced test samples and collection rates, with the balance of \$114,419 of the differential directly attributable to a decrease in the overall combined sales of the BREVAGen™ and BREVAGenplus® tests. Samples received for BREVAGen™ and BREVAGenplus® tests during 2017 were 895 compared to 1,184 in the previous financial year.

Overheads decreased by \$852,040 compared with 2016. The combined areas of selling/ marketing, administration, licensing and operations (excluding net foreign currency losses) totaled \$8,053,462 for the year compared with \$8,905,502 for 2016. The overall decrease is reflective of the ongoing commitment to effectively manage overhead spending.

Table of Contents

The loss for the year of \$8,403,826 includes a \$544,694 expense for the impairment of intangible assets. No significant items were reported during the previous financial year.

**Cost of sales**

Our cost of sales from continuing operations decreased by 34% from \$743,060 to \$492,417. There was a slight increase in BREVAGenplus® direct materials utilized of \$12,814 as a result of the operating inefficiencies of performing testing on a reduced number of samples received. Depreciation expense attributable to the laboratory testing equipment increased by \$ 10,890 whilst direct labour costs decreased by \$46,347 as a result of a streamlined laboratory team. There was a decrease in inventories written off of \$228,000 in 2017, which included BREVAGenplus® materials that had expired during the year of \$ 53,856.

**Other revenue**

Other revenue which in prior years included total revenues generated from our licensing and royalty and annuity activities decreased by \$300,548 (100%) to \$ Nil. This decrease is attributable to the expiry of a license agreement with Applera Corporation in December 2015 as well as being reflective of the Company's restructuring activities initiated in 2015, whereby focus on the previous licensing and assertion programme was minimized.

Although there was an overall change in focus during 2015 to grow sales revenues of BREVAGenplus® in the U.S, the Company will continue to use Sheridan Ross to assist with its licensing and intellectual property activities.

**Selling and marketing expenses**

Selling and marketing expenses decreased by \$465,023 (15%) to \$2,721,474 during the 2017 financial year. Personnel related costs decreased by \$201,799 (12%) as a direct result of ongoing natural attrition within the U.S. sales and marketing team. Fees paid for public relations services decreased by \$207,361 to \$Nil as the Company terminated its agreement with a service provider in 2016.

**General and administrative expenses**

General and administrative expenses (excluding net foreign currency losses) decreased by \$68,124 (2%) to \$2,933,659 during the financial year.

In line with streamlined commercial operations subsequent to the 2015 restructuring, fees for tax advice and compliance, accounting and other services decreased by \$55,259 (34%) to \$107,997. In the absence of any specific U.S filing such as an f-3 shelf filing undertaken in the U.S. during 2016, Legal and other U.S. regulatory costs incurred under a streamlined operating structure decreased by 32% (\$58,006) to \$125,992.

**Licensing, patent and legal costs**

No Licensing, patent and legal costs were incurred during 2017. The last of the personnel associated with the Licensing assertion programme left the Company in July 2015 and consulting fees paid in relation to the programme ceased in November 2014. Prior year costs have been combined with Laboratory, research and development costs for disclosure purposes in the Statement of Comprehensive Income/ (loss) for 2017.

**Laboratory, research and development costs**

Laboratory, research and development costs decreased by \$321,999 (12%) to \$2,366,334 during the 2017 financial year. As a result of lower test samples received, there was a reduction in 2 part time and 1 full time positions during the year, which resulted in a decrease in employee related costs of \$72,384 (8%) to \$827,929. Patent & legal costs decreased by \$59,724 (12%) to \$438,915, primarily (\$49,212 or 82% of the decrease) attributable to the restructuring activities of 2015, and the decision to no longer actively pursue the RareCollect research project. Additionally, as a result of the impairment of the intangible assets at December 31, 2016, the amortization expense associated with the intangible assets decreased by \$63,782 (50%) in 2017.

**Finance costs**

Finance costs increased by \$3,106 (11%) to \$ 31,995 during the 2017 year. Finance costs incurred in 2017 and 2016 were primarily bank charges.

Table of Contents

**Non-Operating income and expenses**

Other income and expenses included the following movements:

- Research and development tax credit of \$253,159 in the current financial year decreased by \$106,614. The research tax credit is recognized on an accrual basis when realizable. There was a decrease in laboratory supplies used in research activities of \$ 155,240 as most of the work was undertaken at third party collaborator facilities.
- A net foreign currency loss of \$175,871 (2016; \$427,574) was recorded for the year. The loss is primarily driven by the translation of US dollar cash reserves to Australian dollars at June 30, 2017.
- An impairment expense of \$544,694 (2016: \$ Nil) relating to the BREVAGen intangible assets was recognized. The assets have been impaired in line with IAS 36, Impairment of assets and the Company's accounting policy, as disclosed in note 2 of the 2017 Annual Report

**Comparison of the year ended June 30, 2016 to the year ended June 30, 2015**

**Revenues from operations**

The operating result for the year is directly reflective of the repositioning of the business involving the divestment of the Australian Heritage business that took place in 2015. The Group's primary focus during 2016 has been geared toward establishing the BREVAGen*plus*® test as a leading non-hereditary breast cancer risk assessment test that is affordable to all women who qualify for the test. Attaining Peer-reviewed publication in medical journals, strengthening of the management team in the U.S., an intensified and targeted marketing campaign with national reach, a refreshed BREVAGen*plus*® website and a reinvigorated social media presence have been key elements in the drive to achieve this goal.

During the 2016 financial year, Genetic Technologies Limited and its subsidiaries generated consolidated gross revenues from continuing operations, excluding other revenue, of \$824,586 compared to \$2,011,918 in the preceding year. \$756,354 of this differential is directly attributable to the divested Heritage business with the balance of \$430,978 due to a decrease in the overall combined sales of the BREVAGen™ and BREVAGen*plus*® tests. Samples received for BREVAGen™ and BREVAGen*plus*® tests during 2016 were 1,184 compared to 2,659 in the previous financial year. Following changes to the U.S. leadership team as disclosed in 2015, in order to steady the decline in samples received and improve the revenue generated, a new Vice President sales and marketing was employed in November 2015, as well as a Director of Marketing and Senior Medical Director in January and June 2016 respectively.

Savings achieved from the ongoing restructuring activities during the 2016 financial year which are reflective of the divestment of the Heritage business in the prior financial year resulted in a decrease in overheads by \$2,945,988 compared with 2015. The combined areas of selling/marketing, administration, licensing and operations totaled \$9,333,076 for the year compared with \$12,279,064 for 2015. The decreased licensing activities accounted for \$331,837 of the decrease with the remaining \$2,614,151 million the result of the divestment of the Heritage business in November 2014, benefits derived from restructure activities and better management with overhead spending.

There were no significant items reported during 2016 compared to a \$1,396,798 pre-tax profit on the sale of the Heritage business and a write-down of \$795,533 against the opening asset value for the Immunaid option disclosed in 2015.

#### **Cost of sales**

Our cost of sales from continuing operations decreased by 17% from \$891,243 to \$743,060. There was a decrease in BREVAGen™ and BREVAGen*plus*® direct materials utilized of \$156,927 in line with the reduced tests sold and a \$295,355 decrease in direct materials and labour costs directly attributable to the genetic testing services disposed of in November 2014. This overall decrease was partially offset by an increase in inventories written off of \$299,669 in 2016, the majority of which (67%) included BREVAGen*plus*® materials that had expired during the year of \$ 218,178.

#### **Other revenue**

Other revenue which includes the total revenues generated from our licensing activities decreased by \$726,603 (71%) in 2016 to \$300,548. This decrease was primarily as a result of a decrease in licensing income from Applera Corporation from \$781,108 in 2015 to \$149,837 in 2016 due to the expiry of the agreement in December 2015. Reflective of the Company's restructuring activities initiated

Table of Contents

in 2015, there was also a decrease in royalties and annuities received of \$40,839 as well as a decrease in other licensing income of \$54,493.

Although there was an overall change in focus during 2015 to grow sales revenues of BREVAGenplus® in the U.S, the Company will continue to use Sheridan Ross to assist with its licensing and intellectual property activities.

**Selling and marketing expenses**

Selling and marketing expenses decreased by \$1,317,802 (29%) to \$3,186,497 during the 2016 financial year. Personnel related costs decreased by \$806,837 (31%) as a direct result of restructuring activities initiated in 2015. A new sales and marketing team in the U.S. has been assembled to increase revenue and drive market development through direct sales to Breast Centers and individual Obstetricians and Gynaecologists. Fees paid for billing services decreased by \$106,378 in line with the decrease in test samples in 2016.

There were also decreases in peer to peer/ key opinion leader reimbursement costs of \$164,506 (54%) and travel related costs of \$97,758 (36%).

**General and administrative expenses**

General and administrative expenses decreased by \$793,631 (19%) to \$3,429,357 during the financial year. Included in the general and administrative expenses is a net foreign currency loss of \$427,574 (2015; \$200,243) which is primarily driven by the translation of US dollar cash reserves to Australian dollars at June 30, 2016.

Share based payment expenses decreased by \$ 289,965 (88%) to \$40,093. Included in this cost for the year ended June 30, 2015 was an amount of \$330,059 associated with the Kentgrove Standby facility which was not recurring in 2016 (refer Item 10A. below for further details on the Kentgrove Standby Facility). Occupancy related costs associated with the make good of lease fitouts of the Company's Fitzroy premises that initially commenced in the 2015 year decreased by \$336,744.

There was also a decrease in personnel related costs of \$287,578 to \$1,437,731 as the finance and administration team in Australia underwent several changes in order to best support the Company subsequent to the restructuring activities. These changes include a reduction in two full time and one part time finance and administration positions.

**Licensing, patent and legal costs**



## Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

Licensing, patent and legal costs decreased significantly by \$331,837 (76%) to \$103,581 during the 2016 financial year as further actions as per the Company restructuring announcement of November 2014 to reduce reliance on the previous licensing assertion programme were implemented. Employment related costs decreased by \$183,246 as the last of the personnel associated with the Licensing assertion programme left the Company in July 2015. Consulting fees paid in relation to the programme had ceased in November 2014 resulting in a reduction of \$75,800 to Nil for 2016.

### **Laboratory, research and development costs**

Laboratory, research and development costs decreased by \$266,913 (9%) to \$2,584,752 during the 2016 financial year. Similar to 2015 changes, there was a substantial decrease (21%) in employee costs of \$237,552 as a result of the suspension of the RareCollect research project and the sale of the Australian Heritage business. These changes implemented in 2015 also lead to a reduction in the laboratory supplies and consumables purchased of \$142,045 to \$34,842. Patent & legal costs increased by \$76,494 as the Company improved its overall global protection of the BREVA Gen™ breast cancer risk assessment IP.

### **Finance costs**

Finance costs decreased by \$235,805 (89%) to \$ 28,889 during the 2016 year. Finance costs incurred in 2015 were primarily associated with the issue of convertible notes of \$ 150,500, and secured debt notes of \$75,721.

### **Non-Operating income and expenses**

Other income and expenses included the following movements:

Table of Contents

- Research and development tax credit of \$359,803 in the current financial year increased by \$248,615. The research tax credit is recognized on an accrual basis when realizable. During the year ended June 30, 2016 costs associated with research activities undertaken in the United States were eligible for inclusion for the first time following a successful application to the relevant statutory body in Australia. Eligibility is available for a further 4 years and resulted in an additional credit of \$39,191 in the current year.
- Rental income of \$ 58,002 was received from SDS when the Australian Heritage business was sold at the end of November 2014 this arrangement continued until August 2015 when SDS vacated the premises in Fitzroy.

**Item 5.B                    Liquidity and Capital Resources**

**Summary**

Since inception, our operations have been financed primarily from capital contributions by our stockholders, proceeds from our licensing activities and revenues from operations, grants, and interest earned on the Company's cash and cash equivalents. Currently our overall cash position depends on completion of our research & development activities, overall market acceptance of and revenue generated by our BREVAGenplus® test, grants and interest earned on the Company's cash & cash equivalents. The Company's cash and cash equivalents were \$10,988,255 as of June 30, 2017.

During the year ended June 30, 2017, we incurred comprehensive losses of \$8,534,481. During the year ended June 30, 2016, we incurred comprehensive losses of \$7,151,746. During the year ended June 30, 2015, we incurred comprehensive losses of \$8,396,165.

During the year ended June 30, 2017, the Company's net cash flows used in continuing operations were \$6,813,639. During the year ended June 30, 2016, the Company's net cash flows used in continuing operations were \$7,726,838. During the year ended June 30, 2015, the Company's net cash flows used in continuing operations were \$9,691,528.

The Directors expect increased cash outflows from operations during the 2018 financial year as the Company continues to invest resources in expanding the research & development, particularly the development of the colorectal cancer risk assessment test, and sales & marketing activities in support of BREVAGenplus in the U.S. As a result of these expected cash outflows, the Directors have initiated a comprehensive strategic review of the Group's operations. This review, which commenced during the first half of the 2018 financial year, will explore a wide range of possible strategic alternatives designed to maximise near and long-term value for the Group's shareholders (the Group has retained Roth Capital Partners LLC to serve as a financial advisor in the process). The strategic review will also give consideration to future cash needs to ensure the Group continues to hold adequate levels of cash resources to meet creditors and other commitments.

**Going Concern.** The longer-term viability of the Company and its ability to continue as a going concern and meet its debts and commitments as they fall due is dependent on the successful completion and implementation of the results of the strategic review.

Due to the uncertainty surrounding the completion and implementation of the results of the strategic review, and the timing, quantum or the ability to raise additional funds if identified in the strategic review, there is a material uncertainty that may cast significant doubt on the Company's ability to continue as a going concern and therefore, that it may be unable to realize its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business. However, the Directors believe that the Company will be successful in the above matters and accordingly, have prepared the attached financial report on a going concern basis.

**Operating Activities.** Our net cash from / (used in) operating activities was \$(6,813,639), \$(7,726,838) and \$(9,691,528) for the years ended June 30, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively. Cash from / (used in) operating activities for each period consisted primarily of losses incurred in operations reduced by impairment of intangible assets expenses, depreciation and amortization expenses, share based payments expenses, foreign exchange movements and unrealized profits and losses relating to investments. In approximate order of magnitude, cash outflows typically consist of staff-related costs, marketing expenses, service testing expenses, general and administrative expenses, legal/patent fees and research and development costs.

**Investing Activities.** Our net cash from / (used in) investing activities was \$(182,149), \$(296,331) and \$1,965,422 for the years ended June 30, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively. During the year ended June 30, 2017, \$52,650 was received from the sale of unutilized laboratory equipment that was superfluous to the requirements of the Company's current operations following the 2015 divestment of the Heritage business. Apart from the purchase of plant and equipment of \$234,799 in 2017, \$303,462 in 2016, and \$192,592 in 2015, we had no other significant capital expenditures for the years ended June 30, 2017, 2016 and 2015.

Table of Contents

**Financing Activities.** Our net cash from / (used in) financing activities was \$7,110,049, \$(1,654) and \$22,867,263 for the years ended June 30, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively. During the year ended June 30, 2017, the Company generated cash flows of \$8,049,369 from the issue of 720,000,000 ordinary shares and \$295,110 from a facility fee rebate on previously issued shares less costs associated with the transactions of \$(1,234,430). No new financing activities were undertaken for the year ended June 30, 2016, whilst in respect of the year ended June 30, 2015, the Company generated gross cash flows of \$23,289,927 from the issue of 744,540,728 ordinary shares, \$2,150,000 from the issue of convertible notes less costs associated with these transactions of \$(2,572,664).

**Future cash requirements**

The Directors have undertaken an assessment of the Company's ability to pay its debts as and when they fall due. As part of this assessment, the Directors have had regard to the Company's cash flow forecasts for the twelve month period from the date at which the Financial Report was authorized and lodged and the cash balance on hand as of that date. The Directors recognize that there is uncertainty in the consolidated entity's cash flow forecasts, and that the continuing viability of the Company and its ability to continue as a going concern and meet its debts and commitments as they fall due is dependent on the successful completion and implementation of the results of a comprehensive strategic review that has been initiated.

We do not have any lines of credit and nominal credit card facilities with National Australia Bank Limited ( NAB ) and Bank of America, N.A. which, as of June 30, 2017, had total available credit of \$293,700.

**Operating leases**

We are obligated under two operating leases that were in place at June 30, 2017. These leases relate to the premises occupied by the Company in Fitzroy, Victoria, Australia and by its U.S. subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc., in Charlotte, North Carolina, U.S.A.

The future minimum lease payments in respect of the two operating leases that were in place and had remaining non-cancellable lease terms as of June 30, 2017 were \$263,668.

**Item 5.C Research and Development, Patents and Licenses, etc.**

Our principal business is biotechnology, with a historical emphasis on genomics and genetics, the licensing of our non-coding patents, reduction to practice of our fetal cell patents and expansion of the related service testing business. Research and development expenditure as below is reflective of the changes implemented during 2015 following the sale of the Australian Heritage business in November 2014, and a focus the BREVAGenplus® breast cancer risk test. In November 2016, we commenced work on the colorectal cancer (CRC) risk assessment test project.

The following table details historic R&D expenditure by project.

	2017	2016	2015
	\$	\$	\$
RareCollect (1)	10,782	59,453	170,107
BREVA <i>Genplus</i>	216,121	282,460	346,792
Colorectal Cancer Risk Assessment Test	114,651		
Other general R&D	77,044	53,625	211,693
Total R&D expense	418,598	395,538	728,592
Other expenditure	8,847,846	9,680,597	12,441,715
Total expenditure	9,266,444	10,076,136	13,170,307
R&D as a % of total expenditure	5%	4%	6%

---

(1) The RareCollect project ceased during 2014. The costs incurred since then relate to legal fees associated with the patent portfolio.

Table of Contents

**Item 5.D Trend Information**

**The direction of genetic research and breast cancer**

During the 1990s, the two major susceptibility genes for breast cancer, *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*, were identified. Mutations in these genes account for approximately 30% of the familial risk for breast cancer. Following these discoveries, a large number of candidate gene studies were conducted over the following decade, aimed at identifying moderate and low-penetrance alleles believed to be responsible for the remaining familial risk.

In 2007, one of the very first large scale genome-wide association studies (GWAS) reported five significant loci associated with breast cancer risk. It was these loci which formed the basis of the Company's first generation BREVA Gen breast cancer risk assessment test. Further GWAS continue to provide additional loci associated with breast cancer risk and these are incorporated into the Company's second generation BREVA Gen *plus* test. The Company continues to monitor developments in the field.

Following the success of the initial GWAS for breast cancer and improvements in the technology required to conduct the studies, many international research groups are now investigating genetic associations with different types of cancer and other multifactorial diseases. These studies are likely to lead to new genetic tests for disease susceptibility, both in cancer and other diseases.

Our ability to produce such tests will depend on our ability to secure licensing agreements to the underlying technology or to take part in the basic research studies.

We believe that the demand for genetic risk assessment testing is in its infancy and will continue to grow in the coming years.

**Item 5E. Off-balance sheet arrangements**

We are not a party to any material off-balance sheet arrangements. In addition, we have no unconsolidated special purpose financing or partnership entities that are likely to create any material contingent obligations.

**Item 5F. Information about contractual obligations**

The table below shows the contractual obligations and commercial commitments as of June 30, 2017:

	0-1 year	>1-<3 years	>3-<5 years	>5 years
Operating lease commitments	\$ 227,992	\$ 35,676	\$	\$

The above financial obligations are in respect of leases over office and laboratory premises.

**Item 6. Directors, Senior Management and Employees**

**Item 6.A Directors and Senior Management**

The Directors of the Company as of the date of this Annual Report are:

**Dr. Malcolm R. Brandon, BScAgr, PhD (Non-Executive)**

Dr. Brandon was appointed to the Board on October 5, 2009 and as its Chairman on November 28, 2012. He has over 40 years experience in commercially focused research and development and in building successful companies which have commercialized a wide range of Australian and international technologies. Dr. Brandon is currently Managing Director of genetics and artificial animal breeding company Clone International which uses cloning technologies to preserve the genetics of elite animals.

**Eutillio Buccilli, (Executive Director and Chief Executive Officer)**

Mr. Buccilli was appointed to the Board in June 2015. He joined the Company in June 2014 as Chief Financial Officer. In November 2014, he was appointed to the position of Chief Operating Officer and Chief Financial Officer and was subsequently appointed Chief Executive Officer in February 2015.

Mr. Buccilli has more than 35 years of senior management experience in the financial services, contracting and recruitment, property and retail industries in Australia and the U.S. He has held senior management positions with blue chip corporations such as General Electric ( GE ), Computer Science Corporation, Coles Myer and Challenger Limited. Whilst at GE, Mr. Buccilli was seconded to the U.S., where he worked at the GE Capital Headquarters located in Stamford Connecticut. He brings to the Board extensive financial, corporate governance, commercial and fund raising experience.

Table of Contents

**Dr Paul A. Kasian, PhD, MBA, GAICD (*Non-Executive*)**

Dr. Kasian was appointed to the Board on December 12, 2013. He brings to the Board a combination of expertise in strategic business leadership and biotech investment giving him a deep understanding on key value drivers for companies in generating shareholder value. He is an experienced executive director with demonstrated domestic and international success in funds management, encompassing senior leadership, investment and risk roles.

Dr. Kasian has held senior leadership positions in a number of investment groups, and has significant funds management experience in Australia leading investment in the healthcare and life sciences sector. He holds a PhD in Microbiology and a Master of Business Administration, both from the University of Melbourne, and is a Graduate Member of the Australian Institute of Company Directors. Dr. Kasian is also a non-executive director of IODM Limited (ASX: IOD), ELK OrthoBiologics and Blockchain Global Limited.

**Mr Grahame Leonard AM, BA (Hons), LLB, CA, CPA, FAICD (Dip), AFAIM (*Non-Executive*)**

Mr. Leonard was appointed to the Board on November 29, 2013 and also serves as Chairman of the Company's Audit Committee. He is a qualified Lawyer and Chartered Accountant. He brings over 35 years' experience in the corporate world including Lysaght (BHP), BTR Nylex and The Thompson Corporation. His numerous community positions include former Commissioner, Victorian Multicultural Commission, former Chair, Victorian Government Multifaith Advisory Group and former Director of Transparency International Australia, (the Australian arm of the international anti-corruption watchdog).

**Dr. Lindsay Wakefield, M.B.B.S (*Non-Executive*)**

Dr. Wakefield was appointed to the Board on September 24, 2014. Dr. Wakefield started Safetech in 1985. In 1993 he left medicine to become the fulltime CEO of the Company. Over the next 25 years, Safetech became a force in the Australian material handling and lifting equipment market, designing and manufacturing a wide range of industrial products. In 2006, Safetech was awarded the Telstra Australian National Business of the Year.

In 2013, Safetech merged to become STS (Safetech Tieman Solutions) which is Australia's largest manufacturer and supplier of dock equipment, freight hoists and custom lifting solutions. Dr. Wakefield continues as Managing Director of STS and has been a keen Biotech investor for past 20 years, often at a mezzanine level.

**Senior Management**



We have a professional team of qualified and experienced personnel, including a number of research and development scientists and technicians. The Group currently has 20 full-time-equivalent employees in addition to the four Non-executive Directors listed above. Of the total number of personnel, three have Doctorate qualifications. In addition to the Chief Executive Office, Mr. Buccilli whose details are noted above, the members of the Company's Senior Leadership Team as of the date of this Report, and a brief summary of their relevant experience, are as follows:

**Kevin Fischer, CPA, AGIA, ACIS, B. Com. (*Chief Financial Officer*)**

Mr. Fischer was appointed Company Secretary on January 13, 2016 following his appointment as Chief Financial Officer on November 2, 2015. He has over ten years' experience in senior finance roles with successful diagnostic companies, such as QIAGEN and Cellestis. Mr. Fischer is a CPA and Chartered Secretary who has significant experience in the financial management and reporting for international operations.

**Dr. Richard Allman, PhD (*Scientific Director*)**

Dr. Allman joined the Company in 2004 and was appointed as Scientific Director in December 2012. He has over 20 years of scientific and research experience in both the academic arena in the UK and the commercial sector in Australia. He has wide experience in research leadership, innovation management, and intellectual property strategy, covering oncology, diagnostics, and product development. Prior to entering the biotech sector, Dr. Allman's academic career encompassed oncology research, drug development, and assay design.

Table of Contents**Diana Newport, (Quality and Business Operations Director)**

Ms. Newport was appointed as Quality and Business Operations Director in September 2013. She comes to the Company with extensive international Quality Systems and operational experience in the highly regulated industries of food and pharmaceutical. The Company will benefit from her recent senior roles within the CSL quality control laboratories.

**Chris Saunders, MBA, B.S. (Vice President Sales & Marketing Phenogen Sciences Inc.)**

Mr. Saunders brings more than 15 years of experience in senior sales, operations and marketing roles for start-up, publicly held and multi-national companies in the pharmaceutical and biotech sectors. He served as National Sales Director at Cbr Systems, a cord blood stem cell bank that serves customers in the United States and internationally. Most recently, he served as an early sales management leader at Natera, a genetic testing company that develops and commercializes non-invasive methods for analyzing DNA. During his tenure, he successfully launched new products and product expansions through multiple channels including private practice, hospital, health system and distribution partnerships. Areas of expertise include business development, sales operations, training and management strategies focused on sales growth and market expansion.

**Item 6.B Compensation**

Details of the nature and amount of each major element of the compensation of each director of the Company and each of the named officers of the Company and its subsidiaries, for services in all capacities during the financial year ended June 30, 2017 and 2016 are listed below. All figures are stated in Australian dollars (AUD).

Name and title of Non-Executive Directors	Year	Short-term Salary/fees \$	Other \$	Post-employment Superannuation* \$	Other long-term benefits \$	Share-based Options \$	Totals \$
Dr Malcolm R. Brandon	2017	91,089		8,653			99,742
Non-Executive Chairman	2016	89,303		8,484			97,787
Grahame Leonard AM	2017	56,065		5,326			61,391
	2016	54,967		5,222			60,189
Dr Paul Kasian	2017	56,065		5,326			61,391
	2016	54,967		5,222			60,189
Dr Lindsay Wakefield	2017	56,065		5,326			61,391
	2016	54,967		5,222			60,189
Totals	2017	259,284		24,631			283,915
	2016	254,204		24,150			278,354

**Key Management Personnel**

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

Name and title of Executives	Year	Short-term Salary/fees \$	Other \$	Post-employment Superannuation* \$	Other long-term benefits** \$	Share-based Options ***	Termination benefits \$	Totals \$
Eutillio Buccilli (1) Executive Director & Chief Executive Officer	2017	313,650	33,000	32,566	19,297	45,639		444,152
	2016	307,500	83,800	32,062	15,519	26,623		465,504
Luisa Ashdown (2) Director, Licensing & IP	2017							
	2016	6,856		2,964	(16,980)		53,795	46,635
Diana Newport Quality & Ops. Director	2017	105,493		10,022	10,962	10,533		137,010
	2016	103,343		11,242	(298)	1,373		115,660
Dr Richard Allman (3) Scientific Director	2017	162,053	8,100	16,526	12,528	17,287		216,494
	2016	158,875	11,900	16,518	8,317	2,747		198,357
Brian Manuel (4) Chief Financial Officer	2017							
	2016	66,667		6,333	4,263			77,263
Kevin Fischer (5) Chief Financial Officer	2017	168,300	12,600	17,575	9,421	22,330		230,226
	2016	113,808	16,700	10,812	5,454	9,351		156,125
Chris Saunders (6) US-VP Sales & Marketing	2017	283,402	14,832		7,408	22,330		327,972
	2016	183,760	37,629		12,277	9,351		243,017
Dr Susan Gross (7) US-Senior Medical Director	2017	165,262	7,481		1,978	3,150		177,871
	2016	5,944						5,944
Sub-totals for Executives	2017	1,198,160	76,013	76,689	61,594	121,269		1,533,725
	2016	946,753	150,029	79,931	28,552	49,445	53,795	1,308,505
Total remuneration of Key Management Personnel	2017	1,457,444	76,013	101,320	61,594	121,269		1,817,640
	2016	1,200,957	150,029	104,081	28,552	49,445	53,795	1,586,859

Table of Contents

---

Notes pertaining to changes during the year:

- (1) Other includes a bonus paid or payable to Mr Buccilli in the amount of \$33,000 at the discretion of the Board.
- (2) Ms Ashdown ceased to be an executive with effect from July 2015.
- (3) Other includes a bonus paid or payable to Dr Allman in the amount of \$8,100 at the discretion of the Board.
- (4) Mr Manuel held the role of Chief Financial Officer until his resignation in October 2015.
- (5) Mr Fischer was appointed to role of Chief Financial Officer in November 2015. Other includes a bonus paid or payable in the amount of \$12,600 at the discretion of the board.
- (6) Mr Saunders was appointed to the role of Vice President Sales & Marketing in November 2015. Other includes a bonus paid or payable in the amount of \$14,832 at the discretion of the board.
- (7) Dr Gross was engaged under a consulting agreement to perform the role of Senior Medical Director for Phenogen Sciences Inc (USA) in June 2016. Remuneration is by way of a fixed monthly consultancy fee for services provided on a part time basis to 31 December 2016, after which Dr Gross was employed on a part time basis through an employment contract. Other includes a bonus paid or payable in the amount of \$7,481 at the discretion of the board. Dr Gross ceased to be an executive with effect from September 2017.

Referencing the previous two tables:

\* Post-employment benefits as per Corporations Regulation 2M.3.03 (1) Item 7

\*\* Other long-term benefits as per Corporations Regulation 2M.3.03 (1) Item 8

\*\*\* Equity settled share-based payments as per Corporations Regulation 2M.3.03 (1) Item 11

The details of those Executives nominated as Key Management Personnel under section 300A of the *Corporations Act 2001* have been disclosed in this Report. No other employees of the Company meet the definition of Key Management Personnel as defined in *IAS 24 / (AASB 124) Related Party Disclosures*, or senior manager as defined in the *Corporations Act*

Executive officers are those officers who were involved during the year in the strategic direction, general management or control of the business at a company or operating division level. The remuneration paid to Executives is set with reference to prevailing market levels and comprises a fixed salary, various short term incentives (which are linked to agreed key performance indicators), and an option component. Options are granted to Executives in line with their respective levels of experience and responsibility.

#### **Options exercised, granted, altered and forfeited as part of remuneration during the year ended 30 June 2017**

Details of the options held by the Executives nominated as Key Management Personnel during the year ended 30 June 2017 are set out below. As at 30 June 2017, there were 6 executives and 4 employees who held options that had been granted under the Company's respective option plans.

#### ***Options Exercised***

No options granted as equity compensation benefits to Executives were exercised during the year.

Table of Contents*Options Granted*

During the 2017 financial year 21,500,000 options were granted as equity compensation benefits to Executives.

Name of Executive	Options Granted	Exercise price	Fair value per option	Final vesting date
Dr. Richard Allman 1	5,000,000	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.005	16 Feb 2022
Diana Newport	4,000,000	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.005	16 Feb 2022
Kevin Fischer	5,000,000	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.005	16 Feb 2022
Chris Saunders	5,000,000	\$ 0.01	\$ 0.005	16 Feb 2022
Dr. Susan Gross	2,500,000			
Totals	21,500,000			

*Options Forfeited*

No options granted as equity compensation benefits to Executives were forfeited during the year.

*Alterations to terms of Options Granted in 2016*

During the 2017 financial year, the vesting conditions attached to 31,736,111 options that had previously been granted as equity compensation benefits to Executives were amended as follows;

- a. Date of Alteration: 17 February 2017
- b. Market price of underlying equity instruments at date of alteration: at a price of \$0.01 per share = \$ 317,361
- c. Terms prior to alteration:
  - i. Number and class of underlying equity instruments: 31,736,111 options over ordinary shares with a strike price of \$ 0.02 per share

ii. Time remaining until expiry:

- Options Granted 25 November 2015 (24,236,111 Options) = ~ 3.75 years
- Options Granted 1 April 2016 (7,500,000 Options) = ~ 4.1 years

iii. Vesting conditions; market related vesting conditions of share price growth whereby options can be exercised at any time after the date on which the option meets the vesting condition of the 3 months VWAP of shares traded on the ASX per table as follows;

Tranche Number	Vesting Condition	VWAP Price
1	\$	0.05
2	\$	0.10
3	\$	0.20

d. Terms following the alteration:

i. Number and class of underlying equity instruments: 31,736,111 options over ordinary shares with a strike price of \$ 0.02 per share

ii. Time remaining until expiry:

- Options Granted 25 November 2015 (24,236,111 Options) = ~ 3.75 years
- Options Granted 1 April 2016 (7,500,000 Options) = ~ 4.1 years

iii. Vesting conditions; non-market related vesting conditions of tenure, vesting in 2 equal tranches as follows;

- 50% entitlement released from ESCROW on 30 June 2017, and
- 50% entitlement released from ESCROW on 30 June 2018.

e. Total Fair value of the options;

- i. Immediately before the alteration : \$ 423,798 (using a Monte Carlo simulation method)
  
- ii. Immediately after the alteration : \$ 65,667 (using a Black-Scholes option pricing model)
  
- iii. Difference reduction of \$ 358,131

**Options exercised, granted and forfeited as part of remuneration during the year ended 30 June 2016**

During the 2016 financial year 31,736,111 options were granted as equity compensation benefits to Executives. No options were exercised and 1,500,000 were forfeited.



Table of Contents**Fair values of options**

The above options granted during the 2017 financial year vest in three equal tranches, with the first tranche vesting on the date of the 2017 Annual General Meeting and thereafter on each anniversary of that date, subject to the recipient meeting the vesting condition of continuous tenure during the relevant period.

Fair values at grant date are independently determined using a Black-Scholes option pricing model that takes into account the exercise price, the term of the option, the share price at grant date and expected price volatility of the underlying share, the expected dividend yield and the risk-free interest rate for the term of the option.

Fair values at grant date of the options issued during the 2016 financial year was originally determined independently using a Monte Carlo Simulation method that takes into account the exercise price, the VWAP hurdle (preceding 3 month price), the term of the option, the share price at grant date and expected price volatility of the underlying share, the expected dividend yield and the risk-free interest rate for the term of the option.

**Option holdings of Key Management Personnel 30 June 2017**

Name of option holder	Opening balance	Granted	Number of options		Closing balance	Vesting as at year end		Financial year in which options vest	Fair Value yet to vest \$
			Exercised	Lapsed		Exercisable	Not exercisable		
<b>Executive</b>									
Eutillio Buccilli	14,236,111				14,236,111	7,118,055	7,118,056	2018	90,777
Diana Newport	2,500,000	4,000,000			6,500,000	1,250,000	5,250,000	2019	30,719
Richard Allman	5,000,000	5,000,000			10,000,000	2,500,000	7,500,000	2019	46,438
Kevin Fischer	5,000,000	5,000,000			10,000,000	2,500,000	7,500,000	2019	56,883
Chris Saunders	5,000,000	5,000,000			10,000,000	2,500,000	7,500,000	2019	56,883
Susan Gross		2,500,000			2,500,000		2,500,000	2019	20,000
Totals	31,736,111	21,500,000			53,236,111	15,868,055	37,368,056		301,700

**Option holdings of Key Management Personnel 30 June 2016**

Name of option holder	Opening balance	Granted	Number of options		Closing balance	Vesting as at year end		Financial year in which options vest	Fair Value yet to vest \$
			Exercised	Lapsed		Exercisable	Not exercisable		
<b>Executive</b>									
Eutillio Buccilli		14,236,111			14,236,111		14,236,111	*	205,377
Luisa Ashdown	1,000,000			(1,000,000)					
Luisa Ashdown	500,000			(500,000)					
Diana Newport		2,500,000			2,500,000		2,500,000	*	24,719

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

Richard Allman	5,000,000		5,000,000	5,000,000	*	49,438
Kevin Fischer	5,000,000		5,000,000	5,000,000	*	72,133
Chris Saunders	5,000,000		5,000,000	5,000,000	*	72,133
Totals	1,500,000	31,736,111	(1,500,000)	31,736,111		423,800

---

\* Options vest and are exercisable at any time after the date on which they meet the vesting conditions as described above

## Options

We introduced a Staff Share Plan on November 30, 2001. On November 19, 2008, the shareholders of the Company approved the introduction of a new Employee Option Plan. Collectively, these Plans establish the eligibility of our employees and those of any subsidiaries, and of consultants and independent contractors to a participating company who are declared by the Board to be eligible, to participate. Broadly speaking, the respective Plans permits us, at the discretion of the Board, to issue traditional options (with an exercise price). The Plans conform to the IFSA Executive Share and Option Scheme Guidelines and, where participation is to be made available to staff who reside outside Australia, there may have to be modifications to the terms of grant to meet or better comply with local laws or practice.

Table of Contents

As of June 30, 2017, there were 6 executives and 4 employees who held options that had been granted under the Company's respective option plans. Options issued under the Plan carry no rights to dividends and no voting rights.

Options issued under the Plans during the following financial years are as follows:

Year ended June 30, 2015:

During the year ended June 30, 2015, a total of 6,875,000 options over the Company's ordinary shares were issued to certain employees of the Group. Each option, which was issued at no charge, entitles the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at exercise price of \$0.04 each up to, and including, May 31, 2019, unless exercised before that date. The options vest in three equal tranches after 12 months, 24 months and 36 months from the date of grant, respectively.

Also during the 2015 financial year, no options were exercised and 10,775,000 options that had previously been issued to employees were forfeited. Option holders do not have any right, by virtue of their options, to participate in any share issue of the Company or any related body corporate.

Year ended June 30, 2016:

During the year ended June 30, 2016, a total of 33,736,111 options over the Company's ordinary shares were issued to certain employees of the Group as follows:

**Key Management Personnel (KMP)- see above for more details;** During the year there were two issues of options to KMP the first being 24,236,111 options that were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.02 each up to, and including, November 24, 2020. The second issue was of 7,500,000 options that were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.02 each up to, and including, March 31, 2021. All options granted to KMP during 2016 are exercisable at any time after the date on which the Option meets its vesting conditions, namely the 3 month volume weighted average price (VWAP) of shares as traded on the ASX as follows (subject to any adjustments in the vesting conditions as contained in the option terms) - further details as described in the preceding section.

**Other employees of Phenogen Sciences Inc.:** During the year there were two issues of options to other employees of the Group the first being 1,500,000 options that were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.058 each up to, and including, September 14, 2020. The second issue

was of 500,000 options that were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.039 each up to, and including, January 31, 2021. All options granted to these employees during 2016 are exercisable in three equal tranches after 12 months, 24 months and 36 months from the date of grant, respectively.

During the 2016 financial year, no options were exercised and 4,125,000 options that had previously been issued to employees were forfeited. Option holders do not have any right, by virtue of their options, to participate in any share issue of the Company or any related body corporate.

Year ended June 30, 2017:

During the year ended June 30, 2017, a total of 22,750,000 options over the Company's ordinary shares were issued to certain employees of the Group as follows;

**Key Management Personnel (KMP) - see above for more details;** 21,500,000 options were issued to KMP in February 2017. The options were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.01 each up to, and including February 16, 2022. The options vest based on non-market performance conditions (requirement to remain employed by the Company) in three tranches commencing on the date of the 2017 Annual General Meeting (AGM) of the Company and then at each of the 12 and 24 month anniversaries thereafter. The fair value of each option granted is estimated by an external valuer using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model further details as described in the preceding section

**Other employees of Phenogen Sciences Inc.:** During the year 1,250,000 options were issued to a number of employees of the Company's US Subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc. The options were issued at no charge, and entitle the holder to acquire one ordinary share in the Company at an exercise price of \$0.01 each up to, and including February 16, 2022. The options vest based on non-market performance conditions (requirement to remain employed by the Company) in three equal tranches commencing

Table of Contents

on the date of the 2017 Annual General Meeting (AGM) of the Company and then at each of the 12 and 24 month anniversaries thereafter. The fair value of each option granted is estimated by an external valuer using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model.

During the 2017 financial year, no options were exercised and 1,500,000 options that had previously been issued to employees were forfeited. Option holders do not have any right, by virtue of their options, to participate in any share issue of the Company or any related body corporate.

As of the date of this Annual Report, there was a total of 54,736,111 unlisted employee options outstanding.

Options granted under the Employee Option Plan carry no rights to dividends and no voting rights and generally have an expiry date of nearly five years from the date of grant.

During the years ended June 30, 2017, 2016 and 2015, the Company recorded a share-based payments expense in respect of the options granted of \$ 120,287, \$50,239 and \$(26,536).

This share based payment expense is included within selling and marketing costs, general and administrative costs, licensing, patent and legal costs, and laboratory research and development costs in the statement of comprehensive income/ (loss). The following is additional information relating to the options granted under the respective Plans as of June 30, 2017:

Range of exercise prices	Number of options	Options outstanding	Remaining weighted	Options exercisable	
		Weighted average exercise price	average contractual life (years)	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price
\$0.01 - \$0.10	54,736,111	\$ 0.016	3.96	15,868,056	\$ 0.020
\$0.11 - \$0.20		\$			\$
	54,736,111	\$ 0.016	3.96	15,868,056	\$ 0.020

The following is additional information relating to the options granted under the respective Plans as of June 30, 2016:

Range of exercise prices	Number of options	Options outstanding	Remaining weighted	Options exercisable	
		Weighted average exercise price	average contractual life (years)	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price
\$0.01 - \$0.10	33,486,111	\$ 0.022	4.47	83,333	\$ 0.040

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

\$0.11 - \$0.20		\$			\$	
	33,486,111	\$	0.022	4.47	83,333	\$ 0.040

The following is additional information relating to the options granted under the respective Plans as of June 30, 2015:

Range of exercise prices	Number of options	Options outstanding Weighted		Options exercisable	
		average exercise price	Remaining weighted average contractual life (years)	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price
\$0.01 - \$0.10	1,125,000	\$ 0.040	3.92		\$
\$0.11 - \$0.20	2,750,000	\$ 0.182	1.21	2,666,667	\$ 0.183
	3,875,000	\$ 0.140	2.00	2,666,667	\$ 0.183

The fair value for the options issued to employees was estimated at the date of grant using either a Monte Carlo simulation analysis or Black-Scholes option pricing valuation model;

*Key Management Personnel (KMP)* with the following range of assumptions for June 30:

	2017	2016	2015
Risk Free Interest Rate	2.19%	1.93% to 2.22%	
Expected Dividend Yield			
Historic and Expected Volatility	60%	80%	
Option Exercise Prices	\$0.010	\$0.020	
Weighted Average Exercise Price	\$0.010	\$0.020	
Expected Lives	4.50 years	4.50 years	
Valuation Model	Black-Scholes	Monte Carlo	

Table of Contents

*Other employees of Phenogen Sciences Inc.:* with the following range of assumptions for June 30:

	2017	2016	2015
Risk Free Interest Rate	2.19%	1.93% to 2.22%	2.81%
Expected Dividend Yield			
Historic and Expected Volatility	60%	80%	80%
Option Exercise Prices	\$0.010	\$0.039 to \$0.058	\$0.040
Weighted Average Exercise Price	\$0.010	\$0.053	\$0.040
Expected Lives	4.50 years	4.40 years	3.83 years
Valuation Model	Black-Scholes	Black-Scholes	Black-Scholes

**Modification of share-based payment arrangements**

In February 2017, the Company modified the vesting conditions of the 31,736,111 options granted to KMP during 2016 from that of market related share price growth to non-market conditions of continuing employment with the Company, vesting in two equal tranches on the 30 June 2017 and 30 June 2018. All other vesting conditions attached to these option, including Option exercise price and expiry date remained unchanged. The fair value of the options at the date of the modification was \$358,131 less than the original fair value, primarily as a result of the reduced share price at date of revaluation, as follows;

	Fair Value Post Modification		Fair Value Pre Modification	
Grant Date	1 April 2016	25 Nov 2015	1 April 2016	25 Nov 2015
Options issued	7,500,000	24,236,111	7,500,000	24,236,111
Dividend yield				
Historic volatility and expected volatility	60%	60%	80%	80%
Option exercise price	\$0.020	\$0.020	\$0.020	\$0.020
Weighted average exercise price	\$0.020	\$0.020	\$0.020	\$0.020
Risk-free interest rate	2.08%	2.02%	1.93%	2.22%
Expected life of an option	3.6 years	3.3 years	4.3 years	4.5 years
Model used	Black-Scholes	Black-Scholes	Monte Carlo	Monte Carlo

In line with the relevant accounting standards, the reduction in fair value of the options will not be recognized, with the expense of the original option grant to continue to be recognized as if the terms had not been modified.

**Indemnification and Insurance with respect to Directors**

We are obligated pursuant to an indemnity agreement, to indemnify the current Directors and executive officers and former Directors against all liabilities to third parties that may arise from their position as Directors or officers of the Company and our controlled entities, except where to do so would be prohibited by law. In addition, we currently carry insurance in respect of Directors and officers liabilities for current and former

Directors, Company Secretary and executive officers or employees.

**Item 6.C Board Practices**

**The Board of Directors**

Under our Constitution, our Board of Directors is required to comprise at least three Directors. As of the date of this Annual Report, our Board comprised five Directors.

The role of the Board includes:



Table of Contents

- (a) Reviewing and making recommendations in remuneration packages and policies applicable to directors, senior executives and consultants.
  
- (b) Nomination of external auditors and reviewing the adequacy of external audit arrangements.
  
- (c) Establishing the overall internal control framework over financial reporting, quality and integrity of personnel and investment appraisal. In establishing an appropriate framework, the board recognized that no cost effective internal control systems will preclude all errors and irregularities.
  
- (d) Establishing and maintaining appropriate ethical standards in dealings with business associates, suppliers, advisers and regulators, competitors, the community and other employees.
  
- (e) Identifying areas of significant business risk and implementing corrective action as soon as practicable after a risk is identified.
  
- (f) Nominating of audit and remuneration committee members.

The Board meets to discuss business regularly throughout the year, with additional meetings being held when circumstances warrant. Included in the table below are details of the meetings of the Board and the sub-committees of the Board that were held during the 2017 financial year.

	<b>Remuneration Committee</b>					
	<b>Directors meetings</b>		<b>Audit Committee meetings</b>		<b>meetings</b>	
	<b>Attended</b>	<b>Eligible</b>	<b>Attended</b>	<b>Eligible</b>	<b>Attended</b>	<b>Eligible</b>
Dr Malcolm Brandon	10	11				
Mr. Eutillio Buccilli	10	11			2	2
Mr. Grahame Leonard A.M.	10	11	4	4		
Dr Paul Kasian	11	11	4	4	2	2
Dr Lindsay Wakefield	10	11	4	4	2	2

**Committees of the Board**

## Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

The Board has established an Audit Committee which operates under a specific Charter approved by the Board. It is the Board's responsibility to ensure that an effective internal control framework exists within the entity. This includes internal controls to deal with both the effectiveness and efficiency of significant business processes, the safeguarding of assets, the maintenance of proper accounting records, and the reliability of financial information as well as non-financial considerations such as the benchmarking of operational key performance indicators.

The Board has delegated the responsibility for the establishment and maintenance of a framework of internal control and ethical standards for the management of the Group to the Audit Committee. The Audit Committee also provides the Board with assurance regarding the reliability of financial information for inclusion in the financial reports. All members of the Audit Committee are independent Non-Executive Directors.

The Remuneration Committee is, amongst other things, responsible for determining and reviewing remuneration arrangements for the Directors, the Chief Executive Officer and the Senior Leadership Team. The majority of the Committee is comprised of independent directors.

The Remuneration Committee assesses the appropriateness of the nature and amount of remuneration paid to Directors and Executives on a periodic basis by reference to relevant employment market conditions, with the overall objective of ensuring maximum shareholder benefit from the retention of a high quality Board and Senior Leadership Team.

Table of Contents

**Committee membership**

As at the date of this Report, the composition of these two Sub-Committees are:

Audit Committee:                    Mr. Grahame Leonard AM    Chairman of the Committee  
   Dr Paul Kasian  
   Dr Lindsay Wakefield

Remuneration Committee:        Dr Lindsay Wakefield    Chairman of the Committee  
   Dr Paul Kasian  
   Mr. Eutillio Buccilli

As an executive, Mr. Buccilli does not take part in deliberations pertaining to his own remuneration.

**Compliance with NASDAQ Rules**

NASDAQ listing rules require that we disclose the home country practices that we will follow in lieu of compliance with NASDAQ corporate governance rules. The following describes the home country practices and the related NASDAQ rule:

Majority of Independent Directors: We follow home country practice rather than NASDAQ's requirement in Marketplace Rule 4350(c) (1) that the majority of the Board of each issuer be comprised of independent directors as defined in Marketplace Rule 4200. As of the date of this Annual Report, our Board of Directors comprises of a majority of independent directors.

Compensation of Officers: We follow home country practice rather than NASDAQ's requirement in Marketplace Rule 4350(c)(3) that chief executive compensation be determined or recommended to the Board by the majority of independent directors or a compensation committee of independent directors. Similarly, compensation of other officers is not determined or recommended to the Board by a majority of the independent directors or a compensation committee comprised solely of independent directors. These decisions are made by our remuneration committee which is comprised of a majority of independent directors.

Nomination: We follow home country practice rather than NASDAQ's requirement in Marketplace Rule 4350(c)(4) that director nominees be selected or recommended by a majority of the independent directors or by a nominations committee comprised of independent directors. These decisions are made by our full Board which is comprised of a majority of independent directors. The ASX does not have a requirement that each listed issuer have a nominations

committee or otherwise follow the procedures embodied in NASDAQ's Marketplace Rule. Furthermore, no law, rule or regulation of the ASIC has such a requirement nor does the applicable corporate law legislation. Accordingly, selections or recommendations of director nominees by a committee that is not comprised of a majority of directors that are not independent is not prohibited by the laws of Australia.

Quorum: We follow home country practice rather than NASDAQ's requirement in Marketplace Rule 4350(f) that each issuer provide for a quorum of at least 33 1/3 percent of the outstanding shares of the issuer's ordinary stock (voting stock). Pursuant to our Constitution we are currently required to have a quorum for a general meeting of three persons. The practice followed by us is not prohibited by Australian law.

Shareholder Approval for Capital Issuance: We have elected to follow certain home country practices in lieu of NASDAQ Marketplace Rule 5635. For example, the Company is entitled to an annual 15% of capital placement capacity under ASX Listing Rule 7.1 without shareholder approval. If this amount of annual entitlement is aggregated with an additional placement of ordinary shares, including through the grant of options over ordinary shares, that exceeds 20% of the outstanding share capital, only the excess over the 15% annual allowance requires shareholder approval under Australian law. Such home country practice is not prohibited by the laws of Australia.

**Item 6.D Employees**

As of the date of this Annual Report, the Group comprising the Company and its subsidiaries, employed 16 full-time equivalent employees. The number of full-time equivalent employees as of the end of each respective financial year ended June 30 are as follows:

2017	20
2016	25
2015	23

**Item 6.E Share Ownership**

The relevant interest of the directors in the share capital of the Company as notified by them to the Australian Securities Exchange in accordance with section 205G(1) of the *Corporations Act 2001* as of the date of this Annual Report is as follows:

Table of Contents

Director	Ordinary shares	Percentage of Capital held
Dr. Malcolm R. Brandon		N/A
Eutillio Buccilli		N/A
Dr. Paul Kasian	256,410	0.010%
Grahame Leonard A.M.	6,000,000	0.250%
Dr. Lindsay Wakefield	8,325,263	0.342%

Notes: As of the date of this Annual Report, Dr Wakefield has an indirect interest in 8,333,333 options over Ordinary Shares and Mr Buccilli has a direct interest in 14,236,111 options granted to him under the employee share option scheme.

## Item 7. Major Shareholders and Related Party Transactions

### Item 7.A Major Shareholders

As at the date of this Annual Report, there is one shareholder who is the beneficial owner of 5% or more of our voting securities;

Renaissance Technologies LLC holds 942,180 ADS s, being the equivalent of 141,327,000 ordinary shares or 5.8% of the issued share capital of the Company.

The number of Ordinary Shares on issue in Genetic Technologies as of the date of this Annual Report was 2,435,282,724. The number of holders of Ordinary Shares in Genetic Technologies as of the date of this Annual Report was approximately 2,927.

The Company is not aware of any direct or indirect ownership or control of it by another corporation(s), by any foreign government or by any other natural or legal person(s) severally or jointly. Principal shareholders do not enjoy any special or different voting rights from those to which other holders of Ordinary Shares are entitled. The Company does not know of any arrangements, the operation of which may at a subsequent date result in a change in control of the Company.

### Item 7.B Related Party Transactions

During the year ended June 30, 2017, the only transactions between entities within the Group and other related parties occurred, are as listed below. Except where noted, all amounts were charged on similar to market terms and at commercial rates.

*Phenogen Sciences Inc.*

During the year ended June 30, 2017, Phenogen Sciences Inc., a subsidiary, purchased testing services from Genetic Technologies Corporation Pty. Ltd., another subsidiary at a cost of \$74,762 (2016: \$91,676). This transaction is eliminated on consolidation of the Company's accounts

*Debt convertible notes*

As described in Note 17 of the Financial Report, during the year ended June 30, 2015 the Company finalized the raising of \$2,150,000 via the issue of unlisted secured (debt) notes to existing and new Australian institutional and wholesale investors. The debt notes carried a 10.0% coupon rate, and as approved at the Annual General Meeting, held on November 25, 2014, became convertible notes which could convert into ordinary shares (at a 10.0% discount to the 5 day VWAP). These convertible notes also carry free attached options to purchase further shares in the Company.

\$125,000 of these convertible notes were issued to a holder associated with Dr Lindsay Wakefield, a Company director at the time of issue, on the same terms and conditions as other note holders. All of these convertible notes were converted during the year. The 8,333,333 share options attached to these convertible notes remain unexercised at the end of the year.

There were no transactions with parties related to Key Management Personnel during the year other than that disclosed above.

**Item 7.C Interests of Experts and Counsel**

Not applicable.

**Item 8. Financial Information**

**Item 8.A Consolidated Statements and Other Financial Information**

The information included in Item 18 of this Annual Report is referred to and referenced into this Item 8.A.



Table of Contents

**Litigation and other legal proceedings**

*Australian Federal Court Patent Proceeding*

In June 2010, a group of Australian plaintiffs initiated litigation in the Australian Federal Court challenging the validity of certain claims of an Australian patent owned by Myriad Genetics Inc. (Australian patent 686004 - 004 ). Genetic Technologies was named as a respondent to this matter by virtue of the fact that Genetic Technologies was the exclusive licensee of the BRCA patents in Australia (which includes the 004 patent).

This matter bears a striking resemblance to the US litigation filed by the American Civil Liberties Union against Myriad's US patent equivalent in which a US Federal District Court ruled that isolated DNA sequences are not eligible for patent protection because of the fact that they are products of nature . On July 29, 2011, Myriad successfully appealed this decision with the Federal Circuit Court of Appeals reversing the decision of the United States District Court for the Southern District of New York. On March 26, 2012 the U.S. Supreme Court remanded the case back to the US Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit for reconsideration. On August 16, 2012, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit ruled on the Myriad in the U.S., upholding the patentability of gene patents. On June 13, 2013, the U.S. Supreme Court allowed an appeal, and found that claims for isolated genomic DNA were invalid.

On September 30, 2011, Genetic Technologies filed documents with the Australian Federal Court to the effect that the Company submits to the orders of the Court and takes no further part in the proceedings. On February 15, 2013, the Australian Federal Court ruled in favour of Myriad Genetics in this matter.

Myriad Genetics argued that by virtue of the process of extracting the gene from the body, it had satisfied the requirements of an invention according to section 18(1) (a) of the Patents Act which states that an invention must be a manner of manufacture . Based on previous case law, the Court held that a manner of manufacture requires an artificial state of affairs of some discernible effect that is of economic significance.

That decision was subsequently appealed by one of the plaintiffs on March 4, 2013. The Full Federal Court again ruled in favour of Myriad Genetics on September 5, 2014. The decision by the court leaves intact its earlier ruling that isolated gene sequences, even if they contain the same information as DNA sequences in the body, become a manufactured object as a result of the isolation process, conferring on them an artificial state , and making them patentable.

On September 16, 2014, the plaintiff sought special leave to appeal from the Full Federal Court's decision to the High Court of Australia, which was granted on February 13, 2015. The plaintiff filed a formal appeal to the High Court shortly thereafter, on February 27, 2015. Genetic Technologies did not contest the special leave application or the appeal to the High Court.

On October 7, 2015 the High Court found claims 1 to 3 (directed to isolated gene sequences) of the 004 patent invalid. The High Court held that whether or not an invention is an artificial state of affairs is not the only factor relevant to whether a patent defines a manner of manufacture. The High Court took into account a number of other policy considerations, including:



- a. whether patentability of the invention is consistent with the overarching purposes of the Patents Act (i.e., stimulating, rather than chilling, innovation);
- b. whether patentability of the invention would enhance or detract from the coherence of the law relating to inherent patentability;
- c. whether patentability of the invention is consistent with Australia's international obligations and the patent laws of other countries; and
- d. whether patentability of the class of invention as claimed would involve law-making of a kind that should be done by the legislature;

before concluding that claims 1 to 3 of the 004 patent did not define a manner of manufacture.

The challenge by the plaintiffs did not affect the validity of the remaining claims (4-30) of the 004 Patent. While the 004 patent reached the end of its 20 year term and therefore expired on August 11, 2015, similar claims in other, subsisting patents (including those directed to probes and methods for diagnostic testing relating to specific genes) remain enforceable, affording a monopoly over many uses of gene sequences.

## **Dividends**

Until our businesses are profitable beyond our expected research and development needs, our Directors are unlikely to be able to recommend that any dividend be paid to our shareholders. Our Directors will not resolve a formal dividend policy until we generate profits. Our current intention is to reinvest our income in the continued development and expansion of our businesses.

## **Item 8.B Significant Changes to Financial Information**

Our consolidated financial statements are set out on pages F1 to F41 of this Annual Report (refer to Item 18).

Table of Contents

**Significant other changes**

- Contributed equity increased by \$ 7,110,049 to \$ 122,382,625 as the result of a private share placement and rebate of a facility fee on previously issued shares. Details of the changes in contributed equity are disclosed in note 19 to the financial statements.
- *Impairment of Assets* - Slow growth rates in the market adoption of the BREVA Genplus® breast cancer risk assessment test contributing to net losses represented an impairment triggering event in the first half of the year. The Group performed an impairment assessment, which resulted in a non-cash impairment of \$544,694 being recognized at 31 December 2016. The Company impairs assets in accordance with AASB 136 (IAS 36) Impairment of Assets. This standard prescribes that an impairment loss must be recognized if an assets carrying value exceeds its recoverable amount (refer Note 2 for more details). Management prepares internal valuations of each asset annually (or more frequently should indicators of impairment be identified). The valuations are reviewed and consideration is given as to whether there are indicators of impairment which would warrant impairment testing

Impairment testing conducted at 30 June 2017 supports management's assessment that the intangible asset should remain fully impaired at year end. Details of the impairment testing conducted are included in note 15 to these accounts

- On 17 February 2017, the Company granted a total of 22,750,000 options over ordinary shares in the Company to certain Key Management Personnel (21,750,000 options) and US employees (1,000,000 options). The options, which were granted at nil consideration, entitle the holders to acquire one ordinary share, at a strike price of \$0.01 at any time up to, and including 16 February 2022, subject to certain vesting conditions.

*Changes to the Board of Directors*

There were no changes to the Board of Directors during the year ended June 30, 2017.

**Significant events after balance date**

*Nasdaq notice*

## Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

On July 21, 2017, the Company announced that it received a letter dated July 19, 2017, from the Nasdaq Stock Market notifying the Company that for the last 30 consecutive business days, prior to July 18, the bid price for the Company's ordinary shares had closed below the minimum \$US1.00 per share requirement for continued inclusion under Nasdaq Marketplace Listing Rules (the "Rules").

The Notice stated that in accordance with the Rules the Company has 180 calendar days, or until January 15, 2018, to regain compliance. To regain compliance with the minimum bid price requirement, the Company's securities must meet or exceed the \$US1.00 per share price for 10 consecutive business days.

This deficiency notice does not immediately affect the Company's Nasdaq listing.

If the Company does not regain compliance with the Rules by January 15, 2018, Nasdaq will determine whether the Company meets the continued listing requirement for market value of publicly held shares and all other initial listing standards for The Nasdaq Capital Market, with the exception of the bid price requirement. If it meets the initial listing criteria and upon written notice of the Company of its intention to cure the deficiency, Nasdaq will notify the Company that it has been granted an additional 180 calendar days compliance period. If the Company is not eligible for an additional compliance period, Nasdaq will provide written confirmation that the Company's securities will be delisted from The Nasdaq Capital Market.

The relevant Listing Rules are:-

- 5550(a)(2) - bid price
- 5810(c)(3)(A) - compliance period
- 5810(b) - public disclosure
- 5505 - Capital Market criteria

The issuance of such notices, by Nasdaq, are a matter of procedure, with the Company currently considering its position and the options available in order to regain compliance.

Table of Contents*Comprehensive review of strategic alternatives*

On August 25, 2017, the Company announced that it that it had initiated a strategic review. The comprehensive review commenced during the first half of the 2018 financial year, and is exploring a wide range of strategic alternatives that include a business combination or strategic merger, reverse merger, sale of the Company or its assets, in-licensing assets, an acquisition, or other transaction designed to maximise near and long-term value for the Company's shareholders. Roth CapitalPartners have been retained by the Company to serve as a financial advisor in the process. The Company does not have a defined timeline for the exploration of these possible strategic alternatives and cannot provide any assurance whether or when a strategic alternative will be announced or consummated.

Since June 30, 2017, there has not been any other matter or circumstance, other than as referred to elsewhere in this Annual Report, that has arisen that has significantly affected, or may significantly affect our operations, results of those operations or the state of our affairs in future years.

**Item 9. The Offer and Listing****Item 9.A Offer and Listing Details**

The Company's Ordinary Shares were listed on the Australian Securities Exchange (the ASX) in July 1987. Set out below is the highest and lowest market quotations for the Ordinary Shares reported on the Daily Official List of the ASX since July 1, 2011.

Financial Year	Period Covered	High	Low	
		(in \$0.00)		
<b>Yearly data 2013</b>	Year ended June 30, 2013	0.150	0.060	
	2014 Year ended June 30, 2014	0.105	0.035	
	2015 Year ended June 30, 2015	0.087	0.012	
	2016 Year ended June 30, 2016	0.039	0.016	
	2017 Year ended June 30, 2017	0.021	0.007	
<b>Quarterly data 2016</b>	Quarter ended September 30, 2015	0.035	0.019	
	Quarter ended December 31, 2015	0.039	0.016	
	Quarter ended March 31, 2016	0.027	0.018	
	Quarter ended June 30, 2016	0.024	0.017	
	2017	Quarter ended September 30, 2016	0.020	0.014
		Quarter ended December 31, 2016	0.021	0.010
		Quarter ended March 31, 2017	0.012	0.009
		Quarter ended June 30, 2017	0.011	0.007

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

<b>Monthly data 2017</b>	Month ended May 31, 2017	0.011	0.008
	Month ended June 30, 2017	0.009	0.007
	Month ended July 31, 2017	0.008	0.006
	Month ended August 31, 2017	0.008	0.006
	Month ended September 30, 2017	0.007	0.006
	Period ended October 18, 2017	0.010	0.007

As of the date of this Annual Report, we had 2,435,282,724 Ordinary Shares on issue, without par value. See Item 10B *Our Constitution* for a detailed description of the rights attaching to our shares and Item 12D *American Depositary Receipts* for a description of the rights attaching to the American Depositary Shares.

The Company's securities are also listed on NASDAQ Capital Market (under the ticker GENE) in the form of American Depositary Shares. During January 2015, the Company undertook a reverse stock split (consolidation) which had the effect of resetting the ratio of 1 ADS representing 30 Ordinary shares to 1 ADS representing 150 Ordinary shares. Since listing on the NASDAQ Global Market on September 2, 2005, the ADSs have traded in a range from a low of USD 0.31 to a high of USD 13.85. The most recent sale of the Company's ADSs, as recorded on October 18, 2017, occurred at a price of USD 0.9405.

## Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

### Table of Contents

Following the listing of the Company's ADRs in September 2005, our Ordinary Shares are registered under Section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and we file an Annual Report with the Securities and Exchange Commission on Form 20-F. As a foreign private issuer, we are not subject to the proxy rules under Section 14 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, and our officers, Directors and principal stockholders are not subject to the insider short-swing profit disclosure and recovery provisions of Section 16 of that Act.

Starting in January 14, 2002, the ADSs traded in the USA over-the-counter market under the symbol GNTLY and dealers' prices for the ADSs were been quoted in the pink sheets published by the National Quotations Bureau, Inc. Commencing on September 2, 2005, our ADSs were listed on the NASDAQ Global Market and, subsequently, the NASDAQ Capital Market, under the ticker GENE.

The Company has registered one class of American Depositary Shares (ADSs) on Form F-6 pursuant to the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended. One ADS represents 150 Ordinary Shares without par value. As of June 30, 2017 there was a total of 13,133,394 ADSs outstanding, representing approximately 81.05% of the Company's total issued capital as of that date.

The table below sets forth the high and low sales prices in United States dollars for the ADSs during the periods indicated:

Financial Year	Period Covered	High	(in USD)	Low
<b>Yearly data 2013</b>	Year ended June 30, 2013	4.79		2.00
	2014	1.24		1.00
	2015	11.00		0.31
	2016	4.27		1.62
	2017	2.27		0.75
<b>Quarterly data 2016</b>	Quarter ended September 30, 2015	3.77		1.72
	Quarter ended December 31, 2015	4.27		1.76
	Quarter ended March 31, 2016	2.62		1.62
	Quarter ended June 30, 2016	2.76		1.99
2017	Quarter ended September 30, 2016	2.27		1.70
	Quarter ended December 31, 2016	2.89		1.04
	Quarter ended March 31, 2017	1.38		1.05
	Quarter ended June 30, 2017	1.27		0.75
<b>Monthly data 2017</b>	Month ended May 31, 2017	1.27		1.06
	Month ended June 30, 2017	1.10		0.75
	Month ended July 31, 2017	0.94		0.80
	Month ended August 31, 2017	0.90		0.70
	Month ended September 30, 2017	0.94		0.74
	Period ended October 18, 2017	1.28		0.85

### **Item 9.B Plan of Distribution**

Not applicable.

**Item 9.C Markets**

Effective September 2, 2005, our ADSs were listed on the NASDAQ Global Market under the ticker GENE . Effective July 1, 2010, the ADSs were transferred to the NASDAQ Capital Market. The ticker remained unchanged. Our Ordinary Shares are listed and trade on the Australian Securities Exchange under the code GTG .

**Item 9.D Selling Shareholders**

Not applicable.

**Item 9.E Dilution**

Not applicable.

Table of Contents**Item 9.F Expenses of the Issue**

Not applicable.

**Item 10. Additional Information****Item 10.A Share Capital**

As of June 30, 2017, we had a total of 2,435,282,724 Ordinary Shares on issue. None of these shares were subject to any form of escrow as of that date and, as such, all of the shares were listed on the Australian Securities Exchange and were freely tradable.

Based on our review of shareholder records (based solely on the addresses), as of June 30, 2017 there were 33 U.S. resident shareholders of our Ordinary Shares holding 1,853,616 shares representing 0.080% of the total issued and outstanding Ordinary Shares. Our Ordinary Shares do not have a par value. These figures do not include any Ordinary Shares which may be held by U.S. residents in the form of American Depositary Receipts (ADRs).

During the last five years, the number of Ordinary Shares on issue has increased as follows:

<b>Date</b>	<b>Nature of issue</b>	<b>Number of Ordinary Shares issued / outstanding</b>	<b>Movement in share capital / balance \$</b>
<b>As of June 30, 2012</b>		<b>464,771,819</b>	<b>83,280,142</b>
October 19, 2012	Exercise of 10,200,000 options @ \$0.045 each	10,200,000	459,000
January 24, 2013	Exercise of 500,000 options @ \$0.045 each	500,000	22,500
April 10, 2013	Other transaction costs		(25,797)
<b>As of June 30, 2013</b>		<b>475,471,819</b>	<b>83,735,845</b>
August 9, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	14,555,576	1,048,001
August 14, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	15,999,980	1,151,999
August 30, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	11,111,111	800,000
October 8, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	19,277,837	1,388,000
October 9, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	24,333,333	1,752,000
October 14, 2013	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.072	5,000,000	360,000
November 18, 2013		6,944,445	500,000



Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

Issue of shares as part of private placements @  
\$0.072

December 31, 2013	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	8,714,541	281,722
January 20, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	16,517,440	569,022
February 12, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	17,645,870	554,939
February 19, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	16,379,660	552,975
March 3, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	15,388,290	548,968
April 10, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	17,429,100	533,732
May 16, 2014	Shares cancelled as part of the swap deal	(75,937,500)	(3,569,702)
June 3, 2014	Issue of shares in respect of interest rate true up adjustment relating to March and April, under convertible notes	2,117,250	
June 27, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	22,969,740	531,519
To November, 2013	Other transaction costs arising on share issue		(658,528)
<b>As of June 30, 2014</b>		<b>613,918,492</b>	<b>90,080,492</b>

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

Table of Contents

<b>Date</b>	<b>Nature of issue</b>	<b>Number of Ordinary Shares issued / outstanding</b>	<b>Movement in share capital / balance \$</b>
July 9, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	23,227,950	721,403
August 12, 2014	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	5,142,450	
August 20, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	25,817,550	580,783
October 2, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	31,637,640	621,139
October 20, 2014	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	4,787,190	
October 31, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	46,503,360	306,619
November 28, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	27,655,230	234,192
December 5, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	34,100,456	78,546
December 19, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	8,059,599	102,685
December 29, 2014	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	8,677,729	102,849
December 30, 2014	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.0135	19,074,112	257,500
January 9, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes plus capitalized interest	8,258,496	113,474
January 22, 2015	Facility fee pursuant to a standby equity placement facility	35,876,392	
January 30, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.01407	41,933,191	621,450
January 30, 2015	Exercise of 26,666,667 options @ \$0.015 each	26,666,667	400,000
February 2, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.02447	34,066,809	877,561
February 2, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	78,181,336	889,000
February 2, 2015	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	2,939,998	33,431
February 9, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.020	16,000,000	337,600
February 9, 2015	Exercise of 27,499,999 options @ \$0.015 each	27,499,999	412,500
February 13, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	1,712,663	51,000
February 13, 2015	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	72,260	2,152
February 13, 2015	Exercise of 37,666,666 options @ \$0.015 each	37,666,666	565,000
February 18, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.0695	10,500,000	729,750
February 18, 2015	Exercise of 8,666,667 options @ \$0.015 each	8,666,667	130,000
February 19, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	5,868,122	275,000
February 19, 2015	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	257,233	12,054
February 19, 2015	Exercise of 13,133,333 options @ \$0.015 each	13,133,333	197,000
February 20, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	2,713,459	150,000
February 20, 2015		119,690	6,616

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes			
February 20, 2015	Exercise of 2,000,000 options @ \$0.015 each	2,000,000	30,000
February 20, 2015	Exercise of 7,333,334 options @ \$0.015 each	7,333,334	110,000
March 11, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.0382	392,670,150	15,000,000
March 11, 2015	Issue of shares as part of private placements @ \$0.0334	107,329,800	3,584,815
To March 2015	Other transaction costs arising on share issue		(2,572,664)
To March 2015	Other transaction costs on placement of shares	4,123,608	(57,736)
<b>As of June 30, 2015</b>		<b>1,714,191,631</b>	<b>115,247,128</b>
July 23, 2015	Issue of shares as part of the conversion of convertible notes	1,006,441	25,000
July 23, 2015	Issue of shares for capitalized interest on convertible notes	84,652	2,102
July 27, 2015	Other transaction costs arising on share issue		(1,654)
<b>As of June 30, 2016</b>		<b>1,715,282,724</b>	<b>115,272,576</b>

Table of Contents

<b>Date</b>	<b>Nature of issue</b>	<b>Number of Ordinary Shares issued / outstanding</b>	<b>Movement in share capital / balance \$</b>
December 6, 2016	Issue of shares as part of private placements	720,000,000	8,049,369
To January 2017	Other transaction costs arising on share issue		(1,228,129)
March 16, 2017	Kentgrove Facility Fee Rebate		295,110
March 16, 2017	Other transaction costs on Kentgrove Facility Fee Rebate		(6,301)
<b>As of June 30, 2017</b>		<b>2,435,282,724</b>	<b>122,382,625</b>

During August 2013, the Company completed the placement of 41,666,667 ordinary shares at an issue price of \$0.072 per share, raising a total of \$3,000,000, prior to the payment of one-off transaction costs. A further \$4,000,000 was received by the Company under its Share Purchase Plan ( SPP ), during October and November 2013, before the payment of associated costs. At the same issue price of \$0.072 per share (and after allowing for rounding), this resulted in the issue of a further 55,555,635 ordinary shares in the Company.

On September 10, 2013, the Company announced that it had executed documents with Ironridge BioPharma Co., a division of institutional investor Ironridge Global IV, Ltd. ( Ironridge ), in respect of redeemable convertible notes to raise USD 5,000,000 (the Notes ). The details of the Notes were provided to all shareholders in a Notice of Extraordinary General Meeting at which approval for the issue of the Notes was sought from shareholders. This approval was subsequently received on November 29, 2013.

On December 23, 2013, the Notes were drawn down and the Company received \$5,627,462 (being the Australian dollar equivalent of USD 5,000,000) from Ironridge, before the payment of associated costs.

As at June 30, 2014, Notes with a face value of USD 3,250,000 had been converted by Ironridge in return for which Ironridge received 117,161,871 ordinary shares (including ordinary shares issued in lieu of interest payment and an interest true-up adjustment). The balance of the notes were fully converted during 2015 in return for which Ironridge received 164,771,370 ordinary shares (including ordinary shares issued in lieu of interest payment).

During September 2014 the Company finalized the raising of \$2,150,000 via the issue of unlisted secured (debt) notes to existing and new Australian institutional and wholesale investors. The debt notes carried a 10.0% coupon rate, and as approved at the Annual General Meeting, held on November 25, 2014, became convertible notes which could convert into ordinary shares (at a 10.0% discount to the 5 day VWAP). These convertible notes also carry free attached options to purchase further shares in the Company.

\$2,125,000 of the convertible notes, together with the capitalized interest, had been converted into 150,961,041 ordinary shares in the Company at June 30, 2015.

On July 23, 2015 the balance of \$25,000 convertible notes plus capitalized interest was converted into 1,091,093 ordinary shares in the Company.

On December 2, 2014, the Company granted a total of 143,333,333 fully vested options over ordinary shares in the Company to the holders of convertible notes. The options, which were granted at no cost, entitle the holders to acquire one ordinary share at a price of \$0.015 at any time up to, and including December 2, 2018. At June 30, 2015, 122,966,666 options had been exercised for an increase in capital of \$ 1,844,500. As at the date of this report, 20,366,667 of these options remain unexercised.

During December 2014, the Company raised \$ 257,500 from existing shareholders through the issue of 19,074,112 new shares as part of a Share Purchase Plan.

In March 2015 an additional \$ 18,354,815 capital was raised at a weighted average issue price of \$ 0.0372 per share from professional and sophisticated investors in the United States through an offer of 499,999,950 fully paid ordinary shares, represented by 3,333,333 with each ADS representing 150 ordinary shares).

During January 2015 year the Company entered into a standby equity placement facility with Kentgrove, an investment fund managed by Kentgrove Capital Pty Ltd.

Key terms of the Standby Equity Placement Facility:

- Standby equity placement facility of up to A\$24,000,000 with a maturity date January 21, 2017.

Table of Contents

- Multiple placements permitted.
- For each placement, shares are issued at a 5% discount to a volume weighted average price (VWAP) over the period of the placement.
- A facility fee of 2.33% of the facility amount is payable, to be satisfied by the issue of shares. The facility fee, less 20%, will be rebated at termination or at maturity, pro rata for any amount of the facility that is unutilized.
- The commencement fee rebate may be paid by cash or shares.

As at June 30, 2016, the Company has issued 142,500,000 shares to Kentgrove under the standby facility for \$ 2,566,361.

As of June 30, 2016 and 2015, the following outstanding unlisted options, together with their respective ASX codes and expiry dates, were convertible into Ordinary Shares. The exercise prices are quoted in Australian dollars.

In December 2016 an additional \$ 8,049,369 capital was raised at a weighted average issue price of \$ 0.0113 per share from professional and sophisticated investors in the United States through an offer of 720,000,000 fully paid ordinary shares, represented by 4,800,000 ADS s (with each ADS representing 150 ordinary shares).

In March 2017, the company received \$295,110 as a rebate of a facility fee originally provided to Kentgrove Capital on commencement of a standby equity placement facility agreement entered into in January 2015 that was paid on expiry of the facility agreement on January 21, 2017 in accordance with the agreement, representing a reduction in total equity transaction costs associated with the commencement of the facility.

As of June 30, 2017 and 2016, the following outstanding unlisted options, together with their respective ASX codes and expiry dates, were convertible into Ordinary Shares. The exercise prices are quoted in Australian dollars.

Option description	2017		2016	
		Weighted ave. exercise price		Weighted ave. exercise price
<b>Unlisted employee options</b>				
GTGAA (expiring May 31, 2019)			250,000	\$ 0.040
GTGAD (expiring September 14, 2020)	250,000	\$ 0.058	1,000,000	\$ 0.058
GTGAD (expiring November 24, 2020)	24,236,111	\$ 0.020	24,236,111	\$ 0.020

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

GTGAD (expiring January 31, 2021)				500,000	\$		0.039
GTGAD (expiring March 31, 2021)	7,500,000	\$	0.020	7,500,000	\$		0.020
GTGAD (expiring February 16, 2022)	22,750,000	\$	0.010				
	54,736,111	\$	0.016	33,486,111	\$		0.022
<b>Unlisted options attached to convertible notes</b>							
GTGAC (expiring December 2, 2018)	20,366,667	\$	0.015	20,366,667	\$		0.015
Balance at the end of the financial year	75,102,778	\$	0.016	53,852,778	\$		0.019
Exercisable at the end of the financial year	36,234,722	\$	0.017	20,450,000	\$		0.015

**Item 10.B Our Constitution**

At the Annual General Meeting of the Company held on November 23, 2005, the shareholders resolved to replace the existing Constitution with a revised version. A copy of the Constitution has been posted on the Company's website: [www.gtglabs.com](http://www.gtglabs.com). The principal changes which have been implemented in the new Constitution may be summarized as follows:

- **General changes** – general changes are proposed to make the Constitution consistent with best practice, update legal matters under the existing Constitution consistent with legislative and regulatory developments and to address certain content and language aspects.
- **ASX Listing Rules** – it provides that the Listing Rules prevail in the event of any inconsistency.
- **Shares** – it allows the Directors to issue shares subject to the *Corporations Act 2001* and the Listing Rules.

Table of Contents

- Proportionate takeover power the existing Constitution has a clause in it requiring shareholder approval to be obtained before any proportionate takeover is made. However, that clause is ineffective because it needs to have been renewed at least every three years in accordance with the requirements of the Corporations Act. The new Constitution does not include this clause on the basis that it offers no real benefit.
- Unmarketable parcels the new Constitution permits the Company to sell holdings of less than a marketable parcel in accordance with the procedural and timing requirements of the Listing Rules. This only applies if a shareholder has an opportunity to opt out of any proposed sale arrangement and does not do so.
- Notice of shareholders meetings the new Constitution enables notice of shareholders meetings to be given by electronic means.
- Changes to general meetings the new Constitution enables the Directors to change the venue for, and postpone or cancel a general meeting if such meeting is unnecessary, in the interests of shareholders, if the venue would be unreasonable or impractical, or for reasons of efficiency. This does not apply in the event of a meeting requisitioned by shareholders.
- Quorum for shareholders meetings a quorum of three shareholders represents a quorum for shareholders meetings, whether by way of being personally present, attorney, proxy or corporate representative.
- Casting vote the Chairman of a shareholders meeting does not have a casting vote.
- Number of Directors it contemplates that the number of Directors need to be not less than three nor more than the number determined by the Directors which, until otherwise determined, is ten.
- Share qualification a Director need not hold any shares in the Company in order to be a Director.
- Alternate directors there are no provisions entitling the Directors to appoint alternate directors, on the basis that this is an outdated and undesirable approach.<sup>4</sup>



- **Directors tenure of office** a Director must retire from office or seek re-election by no later than the third Annual General Meeting following his or her appointment or re-election or three years, whichever is longer (other than the Managing Director).
- **Vacation of office** the office of a Director is automatically vacated if the Director is an Executive Director under an employment agreement and that agreement terminates, unless the Board otherwise determines.
- **Powers of Directors** the Directors have a general power to manage the Company's business.
- **Meetings of Directors** the Directors may meet in person or by electronic means.
- **Quorum for Directors meetings** the quorum for Directors meetings is three, unless otherwise determined.
- **Casting vote** the Chairman has a casting vote at Directors meetings.
- **Indemnity** the new Constitution contains an updated indemnity clause in favor of the current and former Directors, Secretaries indemnifying them from liability consistent with the Corporations Act provisions and to the maximum extent permitted by law.
- **Insurance** the Company must maintain and pay insurance premiums with respect to its current and former Directors, Secretaries and other officers to the extent permitted by law.
- **Access** current and former Directors may access the financial and other records of the Company for the purposes of legal proceedings involving the person.

**Item 10.C Material Contracts**

There were no material contracts entered into during the year preceding the date of this Annual Report which were outside the ordinary course of business.



Table of Contents

**Item 10.D Exchange Controls and Other Limitations Affecting Security Holders**

Under existing Australian legislation, the Reserve Bank of Australia does not inhibit the import and export of funds, and, generally, no permission is required to be given to Genetic Technologies for the movement of funds in and out of Australia. However, payments to or from (or relating to) Iraq, its agencies or nationals, the government or a public authority of Libya, or certain Libyan undertakings, the authorities in the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia (Serbia and Montenegro) or their agencies, the Taliban (also referred to as the Islamic Emirate of Afghanistan), or the National Union for the Total Independence of Angola (also known as UNITA), its senior officials or the adult members of their immediate families, may not be made without the specific approval of the Reserve Bank of Australia.

Accordingly, at the present time, remittances of any dividends, interest or other payment by Genetic Technologies to non-resident holders of Genetic Technologies securities in the U.S. are not, subject to the above, restricted by exchange controls or other limitations.

**Takeovers Act**

There are no limitations, either under the laws of Australia or under the Company's Constitution, to the right of non-residents to hold or vote Genetic Technologies Ordinary Shares other than the Commonwealth Foreign Acquisitions and Takeovers Act 1975 (the Takeovers Act). The Takeovers Act may affect the right of non-Australian residents, including U.S. residents, to hold Ordinary Shares but does not affect the right to vote, or any other rights associated with, any Ordinary Shares held in compliance with its provisions. Acquisitions of shares in Australian companies by foreign interests are subject to review and approval by the Treasurer of the Commonwealth of Australia under the Takeovers Act. The Takeovers Act applies to any acquisition of outstanding shares of an Australian company that exceeds, or results in a foreign person or persons controlling the voting power of more than a certain percentage of those shares. The thresholds are 15% where the shares are acquired by a foreign person, or group of associated foreign persons, or 40% in aggregate in the case of foreign persons who are not associated. Any proposed acquisition that would result in an individual foreign person (with associates) holding more than 15% must be notified to the Treasurer in advance of the acquisition. There are statutory limitations in Australia on foreign ownership of certain businesses, such as banks and airlines, not relevant to the Company. However, there are no other statutory or regulatory provisions of Australian law or Australian Securities Exchange requirements that restrict foreign ownership or control of Genetic Technologies.

**Corporations Act 2001**

As applied to Genetic Technologies Limited, the *Corporations Act 2001* (the *Corporations Act 2001*) prohibits any legal person (including a corporation) from acquiring a relevant interest in Ordinary Shares if after the acquisition that person or any other person's voting power in Genetic Technologies Limited increases from 20% or below to more than 20%, or from a starting point that is above 20% and below 90%.

This prohibition is subject to a number of specific exceptions set out in section 611 of the *Corporations Act 2001* which must be strictly complied with to be applicable.

In general terms, a person is considered to have a relevant interest in a share in Genetic Technologies if that person is the holder of that share, has the power to exercise, or control the exercise of, a right to vote attached to that share, or has the power to dispose of, or to control the exercise of a power to dispose of that share.

It does not matter how remote the relevant interest is or how it arises. The concepts of power and control are given wide and extended meanings in this context in order to deem certain persons to hold a relevant interest. For example, each person who has voting power above 20% in a company or a managed investment scheme which in turn holds shares in Genetic Technologies is deemed to have a relevant interest in those Genetic Technologies shares. Certain situations (set out in section 609 of the *Corporations Act 2001*) which would otherwise constitute the holding of a relevant interest are excluded from the definition.

A person's voting power in Genetic Technologies Limited is that percentage of the total votes attached to Ordinary Shares in which that person and its associates (as defined in the *Corporations Act 2001*) holds a relevant interest.

#### **Item 10.E            Taxation**

This summary of material tax consequences is based on the tax laws of the United States (including the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, its legislative history, existing and proposed regulations thereunder, published rulings and court decisions) and on the Australian tax law and practice as in effect on the date hereof. In addition, this summary is based on the income tax convention between the United States and Australia (the Treaty). The foregoing laws and legal authorities as well as the Treaty are subject to change (or changes in interpretation), possibly with retroactive effect. Finally, this summary is based in part upon the representations of

Table of Contents

our ADR Depository and the assumption that each obligation in the Deposit Agreement and any related agreement will be performed in accordance with its terms.

The discussion does not address any aspects of U.S. taxation other than federal income taxation or any aspects of Australian taxation other than federal income taxation, stamp duty and goods and services tax. This discussion does not necessarily address all aspects of U.S. or Australian federal tax considerations that may be important to particular investors in light of their individual investment circumstances or investors subject to special tax regimes, like broker-dealers, insurance companies, banks or other financial institutions, tax-exempt organizations, regulated investment companies, real estate investment trusts or financial asset securitization investment trusts, persons who actually or constructively own 10% or more of our ADRs or Ordinary Shares, persons who hold ADRs or Ordinary Shares as part of a straddle, hedge, conversion or constructive sale transaction or other integrated transaction, persons who have elected mark-to-market accounting, U.S. holders whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar, U.S. expatriates, investors liable for the alternative minimum tax, partnerships and other pass-through entities, or persons who acquired their ADRs or Ordinary Shares through the exercise of options or similar derivative securities or otherwise as compensation. Prospective investors are urged to consult their tax advisers regarding the U.S. and Australian federal, state and local tax consequences and any other tax consequences of owning and disposing of ADRs and shares.

**Australian Tax Consequences**

In this section, we discuss Australian tax considerations that apply to non-Australian tax residents who are residents of the United States with respect to the ownership and disposal by the absolute beneficial owners of ADRs. This summary does not discuss any foreign or state tax considerations, other than stamp duty.

**Nature of ADRs for Australian Taxation Purposes**

ADRs held by a U.S. holder will be treated for Australian taxation purposes as being held under a bare trust for that holder. Consequently, the underlying Ordinary Shares will be regarded as owned by the ADR holder for Australian income tax and capital gains tax purposes. Dividends paid on the underlying Ordinary Shares will also be treated as dividends paid to the ADR holder, as the person beneficially entitled to those dividends. Therefore, in the following analysis, we discuss the tax consequences to non-Australian resident holders of Ordinary Shares which, for Australian taxation purposes, will be the same as to U.S. holders of ADRs.

**Taxation of Dividends**

Australia operates a dividend imputation system under which dividends may be declared to be franked to the extent of tax paid on company profits. Fully franked dividends are not subject to dividend withholding tax. Dividends payable by our company to non-Australian resident stockholders will be subject to dividend withholding tax, to the extent the dividends are unfranked. Dividend withholding tax will be imposed at 30%, unless a stockholder is a resident of a country with which Australia has a double taxation agreement. Under the provisions of the Treaty, the Australian tax withheld on unfranked dividends paid by us to which a resident of the United States is beneficially entitled is generally limited to 15% if the U.S. resident holds less than 10% of the voting rights of our company, unless the shares are effectively connected to a permanent establishment or fixed base in Australia through which the stockholder carries on business or provides independent personal services, respectively. Where a U.S. corporate resident holds 10% or more of the voting rights of our company, the withholding tax rate is reduced to 5%.

**Tax on Sales or other Dispositions of Shares - Capital Gains Tax**

Non-Australian resident stockholders who hold their shares in us on capital account will not be subject to Australian capital gains tax on any gain made on a sale or other disposal of our shares, unless they hold 10% or more of our issued capital and the Company holds real property situated in Australia, the market value of which is 50% or more of the market value of the Company. The Australian Taxation Office maintains the view that the Treaty does not limit Australian capital gains tax. Australian capital gains tax applies to net capital gains charged at a taxpayer's marginal tax rate but, for certain stockholders, a discount of the capital gain may apply if the shares have been held for 12 months or more. For individuals, this discount is 50%. For superannuation funds, the discount is 33%. There is no discount for a company that derives a net capital gain. Net capital gains are calculated after deducting capital losses, which may only be offset against such gains.

**Tax on Sales or other Dispositions of Shares - Stockholders Holding Shares on Revenue Account**

Some non-Australian resident stockholders may hold shares on revenue rather than on capital account, for example, share traders. These stockholders may have the gains made on the sale or other disposal of the shares included in their assessable income under the ordinary income provisions of the income tax law, if the gains are sourced in Australia. Non-Australian resident stockholders assessable under these ordinary income provisions in respect of gains made on shares held on revenue account would be assessed for those gains at the Australian tax rates for non-Australian residents, which start at a marginal rate of 32.5%. Some relief from the Australian income tax may be available to non-Australian resident stockholders under the Treaty, for example, because the stockholder derives business profits not through a permanent establishment in Australia. To the extent an amount would be included in a non-Australian resident stockholder's assessable income under both the capital gains tax provisions and the ordinary income provisions,

Table of Contents

the capital gain amount would generally be reduced, so that the stockholder would not be subject to double tax on any part of the income gain or capital gain.

**Dual Residency**

If a stockholder were a resident of both Australia and the United States under the respective domestic taxation laws of those countries, that stockholder may be subject to tax as an Australian resident. If, however, the stockholder is determined to be a U.S. resident for the purposes of the Treaty, the Australian tax would be subject to limitation by the Treaty. Stockholders should obtain specialist taxation advice in these circumstances.

**Stamp Duty**

Any transfer of shares through trading on the Australian Securities Exchange, whether by Australian residents or foreign residents, is not subject to stamp duty within Australia.

**Australian Death Duty**

Australia does not have estate or death duties. Further, no capital gains tax liability is realized upon the inheritance of a deceased person's shares. However, the subsequent disposal of the shares by beneficiaries may give rise to a capital gains tax liability.

**Goods and Services Tax**

The issue or transfer of shares will not incur Australian goods and services tax and does not require a stockholder to register for Australian goods and services tax purposes.

**United States Federal Income Taxation**

As used below, a "U.S. holder" is a beneficial owner of an ADR that is, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (i) a citizen or resident alien individual of the United States, (ii) a corporation (or an entity treated as a corporation) created or organized under the law of the United States, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, (iii) an estate the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income tax without regard to its source or (iv) a trust if (1) a court within the United States is able to exercise primary supervision over the administration of the trust, and one or more United States persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust, or (2) the trust has a valid election in effect under

applicable U.S. Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person. For purposes of this discussion, a non-U.S. holder is a beneficial owner of an ADR that is (i) a nonresident alien individual, (ii) a corporation (or an entity treated as a corporation) created or organized in or under the law of a country other than the United States or a political subdivision thereof or (iii) an estate or trust that is not a U.S. Holder. If a partnership (including for this purpose any entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal tax purposes) is a beneficial owner of an ADR, the U.S. federal tax treatment of a partner in the partnership generally will depend on the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. A holder of an ADR that is a partnership and partners in that partnership should consult their own tax advisers regarding the U.S. federal income tax consequences of holding and disposing of ADRs. We have not sought a ruling from the Internal Revenue Service ( IRS ) or an opinion of counsel as to any U.S. federal income tax consequence described herein. The IRS may disagree with the description herein, and its determination may be upheld by a court.

GIVEN THE COMPLEXITY OF THE TAX LAWS AND BECAUSE THE TAX CONSEQUENCES TO ANY PARTICULAR INVESTOR MAY BE AFFECTED BY MATTERS NOT DISCUSSED HEREIN, PROSPECTIVE INVESTORS ARE URGED TO CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS WITH RESPECT TO THE SPECIFIC TAX CONSEQUENCES OF THE ACQUISITION, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSITION OF ADRs, INCLUDING THE APPLICABILITY AND EFFECT OF STATE, LOCAL AND NON-U.S. TAX LAWS, AS WELL AS U.S. FEDERAL TAX LAWS.

#### **Nature of ADRs for U.S. Federal Income Tax Purposes**

In general, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, a holder of an ADR will be treated as the owner of the underlying shares. Accordingly, except as specifically noted below, the tax consequences discussed below with respect to ADRs will be the same as for shares in the Company, and exchanges of shares for ADRs, and ADRs for shares, generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax.

#### **Taxation of Dividends**

U.S. Holders. In general, subject to the passive foreign investment company rules discussed below, a distribution on an ADR will constitute a dividend for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent that it is made from our current or accumulated earnings and profits as determined under U.S. federal income tax principles. If a distribution exceeds our current and accumulated earnings and profits, it is generally treated as a non-taxable reduction of basis to the extent of the U.S. holder's tax basis in the ADR on which it is paid, and to the extent it exceeds that basis it will be treated as capital gain. For purposes of this discussion, the term dividend means



Table of Contents

a distribution that constitutes a dividend for U.S. federal income tax purposes. The Company has not maintained and does not plan to maintain calculations of earnings and profits under U.S. federal income tax principles. Accordingly, it is unlikely that U.S. Holders will be able to establish that a distribution by the Company is in excess of its current and accumulated earnings and profits (as computed under U.S. federal income tax principles). Therefore, a U.S. Holder should expect that a distribution by the Company will generally be treated as taxable in its entirety as a dividend to U.S. Holders for U.S. federal income tax purposes even though the distribution may be treated in whole or in part as a non-taxable distribution for Australian tax purposes.

The gross amount of any dividend on an ADR (which will include the amount of any Australian taxes withheld) generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax as foreign source dividend income, and will not be eligible for the corporate dividends received deduction. The amount of a dividend paid in Australian dollars will be its value in U.S. dollars based on the prevailing spot market exchange rate in effect on the day the U.S. holder receives the dividend or, in the case of a dividend received in respect of an ADR, on the date the Depository receives it, whether or not the dividend is converted into U.S. dollars. A U.S. holder will have a tax basis in any distributed Australian dollars equal to its U.S. dollar amount on the date of receipt, and any gain or loss realized on a subsequent conversion or other disposition of Australian dollars generally will be treated as U.S. source ordinary income or loss. If dividends paid in Australian dollars are converted into U.S. dollars on the date they are received by a U.S. holder, the U.S. holder generally should not be required to recognize foreign currency gain or loss in respect of the dividend income.

Subject to certain exceptions for short-term and hedged positions, a dividend that a non-corporate holder receives on an ADR will be subject to a maximum federal income tax rate of 20% if the dividend is a qualified dividend. A dividend on an ADR will be a qualified dividend if (i) either (a) the ADRs are readily tradable on an established market in the United States or (b) we are eligible for the benefits of a comprehensive income tax treaty with the United States that the Secretary of the Treasury determines is satisfactory for purposes of these rules and that includes an exchange of information program, and (ii) we were not, in the year prior to the year the dividend was paid, and are not, in the year the dividend is paid, a passive foreign investment company (PFIC). The ADRs are listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market, which should qualify them as readily tradable on an established securities market in the United States. In any event, the Treaty satisfies the requirements of clause (i) (b), and we are a resident of Australia entitled to the benefits of the Treaty. However, based on our audited financial statements and relevant market and shareholder data, we believe we were a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes for our taxable year ended June 30, 2017, respectively, and expect to be classified as a PFIC in the current taxable year. Given that the determination of PFIC status involves the application of complex tax rules, and that it is based on the nature of our income and assets from time to time, no assurances can be provided that we will or will not be considered a PFIC for any past or future taxable years. In addition, as described in the section below entitled "Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules," if we were a PFIC in a year while a U.S. holder held an ADR, and if the U.S. holder has not made a qualified electing fund election effective for the first year the U.S. holder held the ADR, the ordinary share underlying the ADR remains an interest in a PFIC for all future years or until such an election is made. The IRS takes the position that such rule will apply for purposes of determining whether an ADR is an interest in a PFIC in the year a dividend is paid or in the prior year, even if we do not satisfy the tests to be a PFIC in either of those years. Even if dividends on the ADRs would otherwise be eligible for qualified dividend treatment, in order to qualify for the reduced qualified dividend tax rates, a non-corporate holder must hold the ordinary share on which a dividend is paid for more than 60 days during the 120-day period beginning 60 days before the ex-dividend date, disregarding for this purpose any period during which the non-corporate holder has an option to sell, is under a contractual obligation to sell or has made (and not closed) a short sale of substantially identical stock or securities, is the grantor of an option to buy substantially identical stock or securities or, pursuant to Treasury regulations, has diminished their risk of loss by holding one or more other positions with respect to substantially similar or related property. In addition, to qualify for the reduced qualified dividend tax rates, the non-corporate holder must not be obligated to make related payments with respect to positions in substantially similar or related property. Payments in lieu of dividends from short sales or other similar transactions will not qualify for the reduced qualified dividend tax rates.

A non-corporate holder that receives an extraordinary dividend eligible for the reduced qualified dividend rates must treat any loss on the sale of the stock as a long-term capital loss to the extent of the dividend. For purposes of determining the amount of a non-corporate holder's deductible investment interest expense, a dividend is treated as investment income only if the non-corporate holder elects to treat the dividend as not eligible for the reduced qualified dividend tax rates. Special limitations on foreign tax credits with respect to dividends subject to the reduced qualified dividend tax rates apply to reflect the reduced rates of tax.

The U.S. Treasury has announced its intention to promulgate rules pursuant to which non-corporate holders of stock of non-U.S. corporations, and intermediaries through whom the stock is held, will be permitted to rely on certifications from issuers to establish that dividends are treated as qualified dividends. Because those procedures have not yet been issued, it is not clear whether we will be able to comply with them.

Non-corporate holders of ordinary shares are urged to consult their own tax advisers regarding the availability of the reduced qualified dividend tax rates with respect to dividends received on the ADRs in the light of their own particular circumstances.

Table of Contents

Any Australian withholding tax imposed on dividends received with respect to the ADRs will be treated as a foreign income tax eligible for credit against a U.S. holder's U.S. federal income tax liability, subject to generally applicable limitations under U.S. federal income tax law. For purposes of computing those limitations separately under current law for specific categories of income, a dividend generally will constitute foreign source passive category income or, in the case of certain holders, general category income. A U.S. holder will be denied a foreign tax credit with respect to Australian income tax withheld from dividends received with respect to the ADRs to the extent the U.S. holder has not held the ADRs for at least 16 days of the 30-day period beginning on the date which is 15 days before the ex-dividend date or to the extent the U.S. holder is under an obligation to make related payments with respect to substantially similar or related property. Any days during which a U.S. holder has substantially diminished its risk of loss on the ADRs are not counted toward meeting the 16-day holding period required by the statute. The rules relating to the determination of the foreign tax credit are complex, and U.S. holders are urged to consult with their own tax advisers to determine whether and to what extent they will be entitled to foreign tax credits as well as with respect to the determination of the foreign tax credit limitation. Alternatively, any Australian withholding tax may be taken as a deduction against taxable income, provided the U.S. holder takes a deduction and not a credit for all foreign income taxes paid or accrued in the same taxable year. In general, special rules will apply to the calculation of foreign tax credits in respect of dividend income that is subject to preferential rates of U.S. federal income tax.

Non-U.S. holders. A dividend paid to a non-U.S. holder of an ADR will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax unless the dividend is effectively connected with the conduct of trade or business by the non-U.S. holder within the United States (and is attributable to a permanent establishment or fixed base the non-U.S. holder maintains in the United States if an applicable income tax treaty so requires as a condition for the non-U.S. holder to be subject to U.S. taxation on a net income basis on income from the ADR). A non-U.S. holder generally will be subject to tax on an effectively connected dividend in the same manner as a U.S. holder. A corporate non-U.S. holder under certain circumstances may also be subject to an additional branch profits tax, the rate of which may be reduced pursuant to an applicable income tax treaty.

**Taxation of Capital Gains**

U.S. Holders. Subject to the passive foreign investment company rules discussed below, on a sale or other taxable disposition of an ADR, a U.S. holder will recognize capital gain or loss in an amount equal to the difference between the U.S. holder's adjusted basis in the ADR and the amount realized on the sale or other disposition, each determined in U.S. dollars. Such capital gain or loss will be long-term capital gain or loss if at the time of the sale or other taxable disposition the ADR has been held for more than one year. In general, any adjusted net capital gain of an individual is subject to a maximum federal income tax rate of 20%. Capital gains recognized by corporate U.S. holders generally are subject to U.S. federal income tax at the same rate as ordinary income. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitations.

Any gain a U.S. holder recognizes generally will be U.S. source income for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes, and, subject to certain exceptions, any loss will generally be a U.S. source loss. If an Australian tax is paid on a sale or other disposition of an ADR, the amount realized will include the gross amount of the proceeds of that sale or disposition before deduction of the Australian tax. The generally applicable limitations under U.S. federal income tax law on crediting foreign income taxes may preclude a U.S. holder from obtaining a foreign tax credit for any Australian tax paid on a sale or other disposition of an ADR. The rules relating to the determination of the foreign tax credit are complex, and U.S. holders are urged to consult with their own tax advisers regarding the application of such rules. Alternatively, any Australian tax paid on the sale or other disposition of an ADR may be taken as a deduction against taxable income, provided the U.S. holder takes a deduction and not a credit for all foreign income taxes paid or accrued in the same taxable year.

Non-U.S. Holders. A non-U.S. holder will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on gain recognized on a sale or other disposition of an ADR unless (i) the gain is effectively connected with the conduct of trade or business by the non-U.S. holder within the United States (and is attributable to a permanent establishment or fixed base the non-U.S. holder maintains in the United States if an applicable income tax treaty so requires as a condition for the non-U.S. holder to be subject to U.S. taxation on a net income basis on income from the ADR), or (ii) in the case of a non-U.S. holder who is an individual, the holder is present in the United States for 183 or more days in the taxable year of the sale or other

disposition and certain other conditions apply. Any effectively connected gain of a corporate non-U.S. holder may also be subject under certain circumstances to an additional branch profits tax, the rate of which may be reduced pursuant to an applicable income tax treaty.

**Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules**

A special set of U.S. federal income tax rules applies to a foreign corporation that is a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes. As noted above, based on our audited financial statements and relevant market and shareholder data, we believe that we were a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes for our taxable year ended June 30, 2017, respectively, and expect to be classified as a PFIC in our current taxable year. In addition, given that the determination of PFIC status involves the application of complex tax rules, and that it is based on the nature of our income and assets from time to time, no assurances can be provided that we will or will not be considered a PFIC for any past or future taxable years.

Table of Contents

In general, a foreign corporation is a PFIC if at least 75% of its gross income for the taxable year is passive income or if at least 50% of its assets for the taxable year produce passive income or are held for the production of passive income. In general, passive income for this purpose means, with certain designated exceptions, dividends, interest, rents, royalties (other than certain rents and royalties derived in the active conduct of trade or business), annuities, net gains from dispositions of certain assets, net foreign currency gains, income equivalent to interest, income from notional principal contracts and payments in lieu of dividends. Passive assets are those assets that are held for production of passive income or do not produce income at all. Thus cash will be a passive asset. Interest, including interest on working capital, is treated as passive income for purposes of the income test. The determination of whether a foreign corporation is a PFIC is a factual determination made annually and is therefore subject to change. Subject to exceptions pursuant to certain elections that generally require the payment of tax, once stock in a foreign corporation is stock in a PFIC in the hands of a particular shareholder that is a United States person, it remains stock in a PFIC in the hands of that shareholder.

If we are treated as a PFIC, contrary to the tax consequences described in U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations Taxation of Dividends and U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations Taxation of Capital Gains above, a U.S. holder that does not make an election described in the succeeding two paragraphs would be subject to special rules with respect to (i) any gain realized on a sale or other disposition of an ADR (for purposes of these rules, a disposition of an ADR includes many transactions on which gain or loss is not realized under general U.S. federal income tax rules) and (ii) any excess distribution by the Company to the U.S. holder (generally, any distribution during a taxable year in which distributions to the U.S. holder on the ADR exceed 125% of the average annual taxable distributions (whether actual or constructive and whether or not out of earnings and profits) the U.S. holder received on the ADR during the preceding three taxable years or, if shorter, the U.S. holder's holding period for the ADR). Under those rules, (i) the gain or excess distribution would be allocated ratably over the U.S. holder's holding period for the ADR, (ii) the amount allocated to the taxable year in which the gain or excess distribution is realized would be taxable as ordinary income in its entirety and not as capital gain, would be ineligible for the reduced qualified dividend rates, and could not be offset by any deductions or losses, and (iii) the amount allocated to each prior year, with certain exceptions, would be subject to tax at the highest tax rate in effect for that year, and the interest charge generally applicable to underpayments of tax would be imposed in respect of the tax attributable to each of those years. A U.S. holder who owns an ADR during any year we are a PFIC will generally have to file IRS Form 8621. A failure to file this return will suspend the statute of limitations with respect to any tax return, event, or period to which such report relates (potentially including with respect to items that do not relate to a U.S. Holder's investment in the ADRs).

The special PFIC rules described above will not apply to a U.S. holder if the U.S. holder makes a timely election, which remains in effect, to treat the Company as a qualified electing fund ( QEF ) in the first taxable year in which the U.S. holder owns an ADR and the Company is a PFIC and if the Company complies with certain reporting requirements. Instead, a shareholder of a QEF generally is currently taxable on a pro rata share of the Company's ordinary earnings and net capital gain as ordinary income and long-term capital gain, respectively. Neither that ordinary income nor any actual dividend from the Company would qualify for the 20% maximum tax rate on dividends described above if the Company is a PFIC in the taxable year the ordinary income is realized or the dividend is paid or in the preceding taxable year. We have not yet determined whether we would make the computations necessary to supply U.S. holders with the information needed to report income and gain pursuant to a QEF election. It is, therefore, possible that U.S. holders would not be able to make or retain a QEF election in any year we are a PFIC. Although a QEF election generally cannot be revoked, if a U.S. holder made a timely QEF election for the first taxable year it owned an ADR and the Company is a PFIC (or is treated as having done so pursuant to any of certain elections), the QEF election will not apply during any later taxable year in which the Company does not satisfy the tests to be a PFIC. If a QEF election is not made in that first taxable year, an election in a later year generally will require the payment of tax and interest.

In lieu of a QEF election, a U.S. holder of stock in a PFIC that is considered marketable stock could elect to mark the stock to market annually, recognizing as ordinary income or loss each year an amount equal to the difference as of the close of the taxable year between the fair market value of the stock and the U.S. holder's adjusted basis in the stock. Losses would be allowed only to the extent of net mark-to-market gain previously included in income by the U.S. holder under the election for prior taxable years. A U.S. holder's adjusted basis in the ADRs will be adjusted to reflect the amounts included or deducted with respect to the mark-to-market election. If the mark-to-market election were made, the rules set forth in the second preceding paragraph would not apply for periods covered by the election. A mark-to-market election will not apply during any later taxable year in which the Company does not satisfy the tests to be a PFIC. In general, the ADRs will be marketable stock if the ADRs are traded, other than in de minimis quantities, on at least 15 days during each calendar quarter on a national securities exchange that is registered with the SEC or on a designated national market system or on any exchange or market that the Treasury Department determines to

have rules sufficient to ensure that the market price accurately represents the fair market value of the stock. Under current law, the mark-to-market election may be available to U.S. holders of ADRs because the ADRs are listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market, which constitutes a qualified exchange, although there can be no assurance that the ADRs will be regularly traded for purposes of the mark-to-market election or that the ADRs will continue to be listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market.

Table of Contents

Given the complexities of the PFIC rules and their potentially adverse tax consequences, U.S. holders of ADRs are urged to consult their tax advisers about the PFIC rules, including the availability of, and consequences to them of making a QEF election or a mark-to-market election with respect to the ordinary shares in the event that the Company is classified as a PFIC for any taxable year.

**Medicare Surtax on Net Investment Income**

Non-corporate US Holders whose income exceeds certain thresholds generally will be subject to 3.8% surtax on their Net Investment Income (which generally includes, among other things, dividends on, and capital gain from the sale or other taxable disposition of, the ADRs). Absent an election to the contrary, if a QEF election is available and made, QEF inclusions will not be included in net investment income at the time a US Holder includes such amounts in income, but rather will be included at the time distributions are received or gains are recognized. Non-corporate US Holders should consult their own tax advisors regarding the possible effect of such tax on their ownership and disposition of the Common Shares, in particular the applicability of this surtax with respect to a non-corporate US Holder that makes a QEF or mark-to-market election in respect of their Common Shares.

**Information Reporting and Backup Withholding**

Dividends paid on, and proceeds from the sale or other disposition of, an ADR to a U.S. holder generally may be subject to information reporting requirements and may be subject to backup withholding unless the U.S. holder provides an accurate taxpayer identification number or otherwise establishes an exemption. The amount of any backup withholding collected from a payment to a U.S. holder will be allowed as a credit against the U.S. holder's U.S. federal income tax liability and may entitle the U.S. holder to a refund, provided certain required information is furnished to the Internal Revenue Service. A non-U.S. holder generally will be exempt from these information reporting requirements and backup withholding tax but may be required to comply with certain certification and identification procedures in order to establish its eligibility for exemption.

Under U.S. federal income tax law and U.S. Treasury Regulations, certain categories of U.S. holders must file information returns with respect to their investment in, or involvement in, a foreign corporation. For example, all U.S. holders of PFIC stock are generally required to make annual return filings reporting their PFIC ownership and certain other information that the IRS may require. U.S. holders are urged to consult with their own tax advisors concerning such reporting requirements.

**Reporting Obligations of Individual Owners of Foreign Financial Assets**

Section 6038D of the Code generally requires U.S. individuals (and possibly certain entities that have U.S. individual owners) to file IRS Form 8938 if they hold certain specified foreign financial assets, the aggregate value of which exceeds \$50,000. The definition of specified foreign financial assets includes not only financial accounts maintained in foreign financial institutions, but also, unless held in accounts maintained by a financial institution, any stock or security issued by a non-US. person, any financial instrument or contract held for investment that has an issuer or counterparty other than a U.S. person and any interest in a foreign entity.

THE DISCUSSION ABOVE IS NOT INTENDED TO CONSTITUTE A COMPLETE ANALYSIS OF ALL TAX CONSIDERATIONS APPLICABLE TO AN INVESTMENT IN ADRs. HOLDERS AND POTENTIAL HOLDERS ARE URGED TO CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISERS CONCERNING THE TAX CONSEQUENCES RELEVANT TO THEM IN THEIR PARTICULAR SITUATION.

**Item 10.F Dividends and Paying Agents**

No dividends have been paid by the Company or recommended by the directors since the end of the previous financial year.

**Item 10.G Statement by Experts**

Not applicable.

**Item 10.H Documents on Display**

The documents concerning the Company which are referred to in this Annual Report may be inspected at the offices of the Company at 60-66 Hanover Street, Fitzroy, Victoria 3065 Australia. Following our listing on NASDAQ Global Market in September 2005, we are now subject to the information requirements of the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and, in accordance therewith, we are required to file reports, including annual reports on Form 20-F, and other information with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission in electronic form. These materials, including this Annual Report and the exhibits thereto, may be inspected and copied at the Commission's public reference room in Washington, D.C. Please call the Commission at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information regarding the public reference rooms. As a foreign private issuer, we are required to make filings with the Commission by electronic means. Any filings we make electronically will be available to the public over the Internet at the Commission's website at



Table of Contents

<http://www.sec.gov>. We also maintain a website at [www.gtglabs.com](http://www.gtglabs.com). Information on our website and websites linked to it do not constitute a part of this Annual Report.

**Item 10.I            Subsidiary Information**

The following is a list of the Company's subsidiaries as of the date of this Annual Report:

<b>Name of subsidiary</b>	<b>Place of incorporation</b>	<b>Interest held</b>
GeneType AG *	Zug, Switzerland	100%
GeneType Corporation	California, U.S.A.	100%
GeneType Pty. Ltd.	Victoria, Australia	100%
Genetic Technologies Corporation Pty. Ltd.	New South Wales, Australia	100%
RareCollect Pty. Ltd.	New South Wales, Australia	100%
Phenogen Sciences Inc.	Delaware, U.S.A.	100%

---

\* Placed into voluntary liquidation on June 30, 2017

**Item 11.            Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk**

Our market risk relates primarily to exposure to changes in foreign currency exchange rates and interest rates. Refer Note 30 of the attached financial statements for further analysis surrounding market risk.

**Interest Rate Risk.** As of June 30, 2017 we had \$10,988,255 in cash & cash equivalents of which \$2,468,730 was subject to interest rate risk. Interest income earned on the cash balances is affected by changes in the levels of market interest rates. We invest excess cash in interest-bearing, investment-grade securities and time deposits in high-quality institutions. We do not utilize derivative financial instruments, derivative commodity instruments, positions or transactions in any material matter.

Accordingly, we believe that, while the investment-grade securities and time-deposits we hold are subject to changes in financial standing of the issuer of such securities, the principal is not subject to any material risks arising from changes in interest rates, foreign currency exchange rates, commodity prices, equity prices or other market changes that affect market risk sensitive instruments. Since we hold cash and cash equivalents in Banks which are located outside Australia, we are subject to certain cross-border risks, though due to the size of the holdings these risks are not generally significant.

*Foreign Currency Exchange Rate Risk.* We operate in Australia with active operations in the U.S.A., and are accordingly subject to certain foreign currency exposure. This includes foreign-currency denominated receivables, payables, debt, and other balance sheet positions as well as future cash flows resulting from anticipated transactions including intra-group transactions. Historically, currency translation gains and losses have been reflected as adjustments to stockholders' equity, while transaction gains and losses have been reflected as components of income and loss. Transaction gains and losses could be material depending upon changes in the exchange rates between the Australian dollar and the U.S. dollar. A significant amount of our current revenue is denominated in U.S. dollars which provides us with a limited natural hedge against exchange rate movements.

**Item 12. Description of Securities Other Than Equity Securities**

**Item 12.A Debt Securities**

Not applicable.

**Item 12.B Warrants and Rights**

Not applicable.

**Item 12.C Other Securities**

Not applicable

**Item 12.D American Depositary Shares**

Not applicable.

Table of Contents

**PART II**

**Item 13. Defaults, Dividend Arrearages and Delinquencies**

Not applicable.

**Item 14. Material Modifications to the Rights of Security Holders and Use of Proceeds**

Not applicable.

**Item 15. Controls and Procedures**

**Item 15.A Disclosure controls and procedures**

We maintain disclosure controls and procedures as such term is defined in Rules 13(a) - 15(e) and 15(d) - 15(e) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the Exchange Act), as amended, that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in the reports that we file or submit under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the rules and forms of the Securities and Exchange Commission. Disclosure controls and procedures include, without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in our reports filed or submitted under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 is accumulated and communicated to management, including our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, as appropriate, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure.

Our Management, including our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, does not expect that our disclosure controls and procedures or our internal control over financial reporting will provide absolute assurance that all appropriate information will, in fact, be communicated to Management to allow timely decisions to be made or prevent all error and fraud. A control system, no matter how well conceived and operated, can provide only reasonable, not absolute, assurance that the objectives of the control system are met. Additionally, the design of a control system must reflect the fact that there are resource constraints, and the benefit of controls must be considered relative to their costs. Because of the inherent limitations in all control systems, no evaluation of controls can provide absolute assurance that all control issues and instances of fraud, if any, within the company have been detected or that our control system will operate effectively under all circumstances. Moreover, the design of any system of controls is based in part upon certain assumptions about the likelihood of future events, and there can be no assurance that any design will succeed in achieving its stated goals under all potential future conditions.

Our Management has carried out an evaluation, under the supervision and with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, of the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures as of June 30, 2017. Based on that evaluation, including the material weakness noted below in Item 15.B, the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer concluded that the Company's disclosure controls and procedures were ineffective as of June 30, 2017.

**Item 15.B Management's annual report on internal control over financial reporting**

Our Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting. The Securities Exchange Act of 1934 defines internal control over financial reporting in Rules 13(a) - 15(f) and Rules 15(d) - 15(f) as a process designed by, or under the supervision of, the Company's Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer effected by the Company's Board of Directors, Management and other personnel, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and includes those policies and procedures that:

- Pertain to the maintenance of records that in reasonable detail accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the Company;
- Provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit the preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the Company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of Management and directors of the Company; and
- Provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of the Company's assets that could have a material effect on the consolidated financial statements.

A material weakness is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over financial reporting such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the annual financial statements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis.

Our Management have assessed the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of June 30, 2017. In making this assessment, Management used the criteria set forth by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway

Table of Contents

Commission, or COSO, in Internal Control-Integrated Framework (2013). As a result of that assessment, Management identified the following material weakness as of June 30, 2017.

*The Company did not maintain an adequate segregation of duties with respect to internal control over financial reporting, specifically including the following;*

- The Financial Accountant has full procurement processing rights in addition to the ability to create new vendors in the supplier masterfile of the accounting system.
- The CFO had access to the underlying SAP system to record entries and is also responsible for reviewing journal entries.
- We have limited accounting personnel to enable and sufficiently evidence an independent review of complex financial reporting matters, namely the impairment assessment for intangible assets which is prepared by the CFO.

These control deficiencies are pervasive in nature and impact all significant accounts and critical accounting estimates. These control deficiencies did not result in misstatements to the financial statements, however, these control deficiencies could result in misstatements of the financial statements or disclosures that would result in a material misstatement to the annual or interim consolidated financial statements that would not be prevented or detected. Accordingly, our management has determined that these control deficiencies constitute a material weakness.

Based upon its assessment, because of the material weakness described above our Management has concluded that, as of June 30, 2017, our internal control over financial reporting is not effective based upon the abovementioned criteria.

This Annual Report does not include an attestation report of the Company's registered public accounting firm regarding internal control over financial reporting. Management's report was not subject to attestation by the Company's registered public accounting firm pursuant to rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission that permit the Company to provide only Management's report in this Annual Report.

**Item 15.C Attestation report of the registered public accounting firm**

Not applicable.

**Item 15.D Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting**

The continuity of key management personnel provided a platform that allowed the Company to actively implement changes in improving overall internal control over financial reporting during the year ended June 30, 2017. As a result, we concluded that the following changes during the year ended June 30, 2017 have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

**Remediation efforts**

**Segregation of duties.** We are committed to remediating the material weakness over the segregation of duties by implementing changes to our internal control over financial reporting. We have taken certain steps in an effort to correct certain control deficiencies that were identified for the year ended June 30, 2016, including:

- Although the Financial Accountant still has similar access, we have segregated the system access of the Payroll & Admin manager through the removal of payment processing and editing rights in the supplier masterfile,
- De-activation of user accounts of terminated employees and generic redundant accounting system users, and
- Independent review by the CFO of manual journals posted by the financial accountant and payroll and admin manager.

Additional controls were also implemented during the year ended June 30, 2017 to remediate certain control deficiencies identified, and subsequent to the year-end we have implemented further changes, including:

- Activate & enable SAP system notification to CFO via email of any changes to sensitive fields in supplier masterfile,
- Change of CFO SAP user profile to read only access,

Although these changes are an important step towards improving the segregation of duties, additional time is still required to fully re-assess the design of the controls and implement additional internal controls procedures over financial reporting and test their operating effectiveness.

Table of Contents

**Item 16.A            Audit Committee Financial Expert**

The chairman of the Audit Committee since November 29, 2013 has been Mr. Grahame Leonard A.M. and we believe that Mr. Leonard A.M. would meet the criteria of a financial expert.

**Item 16.B            Code of Ethics**

We have adopted a Code of Ethics (styled Code of Conduct ) that applies to all of our Directors and employees, including our principal executive officer, principal financial officer and principal accounting officer or controller. The Code can be downloaded at our website ([www.gtglabs.com](http://www.gtglabs.com)). Additionally, any person, upon request, can ask for a hard copy or electronic file of the Code. If we make any substantive amendment to the Code or grant any waivers, including any implicit waiver, from a provision of the Code, we will disclose the nature of such amendment or waiver on our website. During the year ended June 30, 2016, no such amendment was made or waiver granted.

Our Board of Directors is responsible for the corporate governance of the consolidated entity and guides and monitors the business and affairs of Genetic Technologies on behalf of the shareholders by whom they are elected and to whom they are accountable.

We are committed to achieving the leading standards of corporate governance.

Reference is made to the revised Corporate Governance Principles and Recommendations issued and revised from time to time by the ASX Corporate Governance Council. The Board believes that all concepts of the revised Principles and Recommendations have been satisfied, however the Board is realistic with respect to the relative size and nature of the Company and have implemented the Recommendations accordingly. The Company endeavors to ensure exceptions to the guidelines do not have negative impact on the best interests of shareholders.

While in most respects the Company complies with the Recommendations, it is recognised that the development and implementation of policies and practices is an ongoing process that evolves with the needs of the business and its stakeholders. ASX Listing Rule 4.10.3 requires an entity that is included in the official list as an ASX Listing to include in its annual report either a corporate governance statement that meets the requirements of that rule or the URL of the page on its website where such a statement is located.

The Company therefore advises that the current corporate governance statement and a summary of its main corporate governance practices may be found via the following link on the Company's website: <http://www.gtgcorporate.com/investor-centre/corporate-governance>

## Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

We are therefore also required to publish an Appendix 4G Key to Disclosures Corporate Governance Council Principles and Recommendations annually that describes our adherence to the revised Corporate Governance Principles and Recommendations. This Appendix 4G with respect to the year ended June 30, 2016 was filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission on August 31, 2016.

In accordance with the Council's recommendations, the Corporate Governance Statement must now contain certain specific information and must disclose the extent to which we have followed the guidelines during the period. Where a recommendation has not been followed, that fact must be disclosed, together with the reasons for the departure. The Company's Corporate Governance Statement is now structured with reference to the Corporate Governance Council's principles and recommendations. Below is an extract from the Company's most recent Corporate Governance Statement.

As at the date of this Annual Report, the following twelve Corporate Governance documents had been adopted by the Board, in addition to the Company's Constitution which was completely revised and subsequently approved by the Company's shareholders in November 2005. All significant policies are published on the Company's website ([www.gtglabs.com](http://www.gtglabs.com)).

- Board Charter, which defines the role of the Board and that of Management;
- Audit Committee Charter;
- Remuneration Committee Charter;
- Board Protocol, which clarifies the responsibilities of Directors and the Company's expectations of them;
- Code of Conduct, including a Document Retention Policy;
- Board Performance Evaluation Policy;
- Risk and Compliance Policy;



Table of Contents

- Continuous Disclosure Policy;
- Securities Trading Policy;
- Diversity Policy;
- Shareholder Communications Policy; and
- Whistleblower Policy.

**Item 16.C Principal Accountant Fees and Services**

The following table sets forth the fees billed to us by our Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm, PricewaterhouseCoopers, during the financial years ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, respectively:

	2017	Consolidated	2016
	\$		\$
<b>Services rendered</b>			
PricewaterhouseCoopers in respect of:			
Audit fees (1)	325,972		334,560

(1) Audit fees consist of services that would normally be provided in connection with statutory and regulatory filings or engagements, including services that generally only the independent accountant can reasonably provide such as comfort letters.

*Audit Committee Pre-Approval Policies and Procedures*

Our Board of Directors has established pre-approval and procedures for the engagement of its Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm for audit and non-audit services. The Board of Directors reviews the scope of the services to be provided, before their commencement, in order to ensure that there are no independence issues and the services are not prohibited services, as defined by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.

**Item 16.D Exemptions from the Listing Standards for Audit Committees**

Not applicable.

**Item 16.E Purchases Of Equity Securities by the Issuer and Affiliated Purchasers**

Not applicable.

**Item 16.F Change in Registrant's Certifying Accountant**

Not applicable.

**Item 16.G Corporate Governance**

Refer to Item 6C regarding the Company's Corporate Governance practices and the key differences between the Listing Rules of the Australian Securities Exchange and the Marketplace Rules of NASDAQ as they apply to us.

**Item 16.H Mine Safety Disclosure**

Not applicable.

**PART III**

**Item 17. Financial Statements**

The Company has responded to Item 18 in lieu of responding to this Item.

**Item 18. Financial Statements**

Table of Contents

**GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED**

**INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

	<b>Page</b>
<u>Genetic Technologies Limited - Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm.</u>	F1
<u>Genetic Technologies Limited - Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income/ (Loss) for the years ended June 30, 2017, 2016 and 2015.</u>	F2
<u>Genetic Technologies Limited - Consolidated Balance Sheets as of June 30, 2017 and 2016.</u>	F3
<u>Genetic Technologies Limited - Consolidated Statements of Changes in Equity for the years ended June 30, 2017, 2016 and 2015.</u>	F5
<u>Genetic Technologies Limited - Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended June 30, 2017, 2016 and 2015.</u>	F4
<u>Genetic Technologies Limited - Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.</u>	F6

**Item 19. Exhibits**

The following documents are filed as exhibits to this Annual Report on Form 20-F:

- 1.1 Constitution of the Registrant.++
- 2.1 Deposit Agreement, dated as of January 14, 2002, by and among Genetic Technologies Limited, The Bank of New York Mellon, as Depositary, and the Owners and Holders of American Depositary Receipts (such agreement is incorporated herein by reference to the Registration Statement on Form F-6 relating to the ADSs (File No. 333-14270) filed with the Commission on January 14, 2002).
- 2.2 The total indebtedness authorized under any instrument relating to long term debt of the Company does not exceed 10% of our total consolidated assets. Any instrument relating to indebtedness will be supplied to the Commission upon its request.
- 4(A).1 Staff Share Plan 2001 dated November 30, 2001. +
- 4(B).1 Lease over premises in Fitzroy, Victoria, Australia with an effective date of September 1, 2015+++
- 4(B).2 Amendment to lease over premises in Charlotte, North Carolina, USA with an effective date of November 1, 2016++++
- 12.01 Section 302 Certification
- 12.02 Section 906 Certification
- 13.01 Section 1350 Certification
- 13.02 Section 1350 Certification
- 23.01 Consent of PricewaterhouseCoopers

## Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

+ Previously filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form 20-F (File No. 0-51504), filed with the Commission on August 19, 2005 and incorporated herein by reference.

++ Previously filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form 20-F (File No. 0-51504), filed with the Commission on December 21, 2010 and incorporated herein by reference.

+++ Previously filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form 20-F (File No. 0-51504), filed with the Commission on November 13, 2015 and incorporated herein by reference.

++++ Previously filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form 20-F (File No. 0-51504), filed with the Commission on October 28, 2016 and incorporated herein by reference.

Table of Contents

**SIGNATURES**

The registrant hereby certifies that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form 20-F and that it has duly caused and authorized the undersigned to sign this Annual Report on its behalf.

GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED

Dated: **October 31, 2017**

By: /s/ Mr. Eutillio Buccilli  
Name: Mr. Eutillio Buccilli  
Title: Chief Executive Officer

Table of Contents

2017 Financial Report

**GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED**

**Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

**To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of Genetic Technologies Limited**

In our opinion, the accompanying consolidated balance sheets and the related consolidated statements of comprehensive income/(loss), consolidated statements of cash flows, and consolidated statements of changes in equity present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Genetic Technologies Limited (the Company) and its subsidiaries at June 30, 2017 and June 30, 2016, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended June 30, 2017 in conformity with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits of these statements in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 2 to the financial statements, the Company has suffered recurring losses from operations that raise substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans in regard to these matters are also described in Note 2. The financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

/s/PricewaterhouseCoopers

PricewaterhouseCoopers

Melbourne, Australia

October 31, 2017

*PricewaterhouseCoopers, ABN 52 780 433 757*

*2 Riverside Quay, SOUTHBANK VIC 3006, GPO Box 1331, MELBOURNE VIC 3001*

*T: 61 3 8603 1000, F: 61 3 8603 1999, [www.pwc.com.au](http://www.pwc.com.au)*

F-1

---

Table of Contents**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME/ (LOSS)****FOR 2017, 2016 and 2015**

	Note	Year ended June 30, 2017 \$	Year ended June 30, 2016 \$	Year ended June 30, 2015 \$
<b>Revenue from operations</b>				
Genetic testing services		518,506	824,586	2,011,918
Less: cost of sales	4	(492,417)	(743,060)	(891,243)
Gross profit from operations		26,089	81,526	1,120,675
Other revenue	5		300,548	1,027,151
Selling and marketing expenses		(2,721,474)	(3,186,497)	(4,504,299)
General and administrative expenses		(3,109,530)	(3,429,357)	(4,222,988)
Licensing, patent and legal costs			(103,581)	(435,418)
Laboratory, research and development costs		(2,366,334)	(2,584,752)	(2,851,665)
Finance costs		(31,995)	(28,889)	(264,694)
Gain on disposal of business	7			1,396,798
Fair value loss on ImmunAid option fee				(795,533)
Impairment of intangible assets expenses		(544,694)		
Fair value gain/ (loss) on financial liabilities at fair value through profit or loss				349,246
Non-operating income and expenses	6	344,112	492,037	370,557
<b>Profit/(loss) from operations before income tax</b>		(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)
Income tax expense	9			
<b>Profit/(loss) for the year</b>		(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)
<b>Other comprehensive income/(loss)</b>				
Exchange gains/(losses) on translation of controlled foreign operations		(130,655)	1,307,219	414,005
Exchange gains/(losses) on translation of non-controlled foreign operations				
<b>Other comprehensive income/(loss) for the year, net of tax</b>		(130,655)	1,307,219	414,005
<b>Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year</b>		(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)	(8,396,165)
<b>Profit/(loss) for the year is attributable to:</b>				
Owners of Genetic Technologies Limited		(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)
Non-controlling interests				
<b>Total profit/(loss) for the year</b>		(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)
<b>Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year is attributable to:</b>				
Owners of Genetic Technologies Limited		(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)	(8,396,165)
Non-controlling interests				
<b>Total comprehensive profit/(loss) for the year</b>		(8,534,481)	(7,151,746)	(8,396,165)
<b>Earnings/(loss) per share (cents per share)</b>				
Basic and diluted net profit/(loss) per ordinary share	10	(0.40)	(0.49)	(0.82)
Weighted-average shares outstanding	10	2,121,638,888	1,715,214,158	1,072,803,358

The above consolidated statement of comprehensive income/(loss) should be read in conjunction with the accompanying notes.



Table of Contents**CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS**

As at June 30, 2017

	Notes	2017 \$	Consolidated 2016 \$
<b>ASSETS</b>			
<b>Current assets</b>			
Cash and cash equivalents	11	10,988,255	11,179,687
Trade and other receivables	12	426,272	630,773
Prepayments and other assets	13	217,122	320,610
<b>Total current assets</b>		<b>11,631,649</b>	<b>12,131,070</b>
<b>Non-current assets</b>			
Property, plant and equipment	14	476,648	550,139
Intangible assets	15		608,477
<b>Total non-current assets</b>		<b>476,648</b>	<b>1,158,616</b>
<b>Total assets</b>		<b>12,108,297</b>	<b>13,289,686</b>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>			
<b>Current liabilities</b>			
Trade and other payables	16	898,103	837,983
Provisions	17	567,190	494,206
<b>Total current liabilities</b>		<b>1,465,293</b>	<b>1,332,189</b>
<b>Non-current liabilities</b>			
Provisions	17	63,960	74,308
<b>Total non-current liabilities</b>		<b>63,960</b>	<b>74,308</b>
<b>Total liabilities</b>		<b>1,529,253</b>	<b>1,406,497</b>
<b>Net assets</b>		<b>10,579,044</b>	<b>11,883,189</b>
<b>EQUITY</b>			
Contributed equity	20	122,382,625	115,272,576
Reserves	21	6,044,493	6,054,861
Accumulated losses	22	(117,848,074)	(109,444,248)
<b>Total equity</b>		<b>10,579,044</b>	<b>11,883,189</b>

*The above consolidated balance sheet should be read in conjunction with the accompanying notes.*

Table of Contents**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS**

For the year ended June 30, 2017

	Notes	2017 \$	Consolidated 2016 \$	2015 \$
<b>Cash flows from / (used in) operating activities</b>				
Receipts from customers		964,520	1,482,970	2,855,599
Payments to suppliers and employees		(7,816,924)	(9,276,907)	(12,583,957)
Interest received		38,765	67,099	39,951
Interest and finance charges paid				(3,121)
<b>Net cash flows from / (used in) operating activities</b>	11	(6,813,639)	(7,726,838)	(9,691,528)
<b>Cash flows (used in)/ from investing activities</b>				
Proceeds from the sale of plant and equipment		52,650	7,131	57,119
Purchases of plant and equipment		(234,799)	(303,462)	(192,592)
<b>Net cash flows (used in)/ from investing activities</b>		(182,149)	(296,331)	1,965,422
<b>Cash flows (used in)/ from financing activities</b>				
Proceeds from the issue of shares		8,049,369		23,289,927
Equity transaction costs		(1,234,430)	(1,654)	(2,572,664)
Proceeds from borrowings				2,150,000
Facility fee rebate		295,110		
<b>Net cash flows (used in)/ from financing activities</b>		7,110,049	(1,654)	22,867,263
<b>Net (decrease)/ increase in cash and cash equivalents</b>		114,261	(8,024,823)	15,141,157
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year		11,179,687	18,341,357	2,831,085
Net foreign exchange difference		(305,393)	863,153	369,115
<b>Cash and cash equivalents at end of year</b>	11	10,988,255	11,179,687	18,341,357

*The above consolidated statement of cash flows should be read in conjunction with the accompanying notes.*

Table of Contents**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN EQUITY**

For the year ended June 30, 2017

Consolidated	Attributable to Members of Genetic Technologies Limited					Total equity \$
	Contributed equity \$	Reserves \$	Accumulated losses \$	Parent interests \$	Non-controlling interests \$	
<b>Balance at June 30, 2014</b>	90,080,492	3,922,140	(92,175,113)	1,827,519		1,827,519
Loss for the year			(8,810,170)	(8,810,170)		(8,810,170)
Other comprehensive profit		414,005		414,005		414,005
<b>Total comprehensive loss</b>		414,005	(8,810,170)	(8,396,165)		(8,396,165)
<b>Transactions with owners in their capacity as owners</b>						
Contributions of equity (net of transaction costs)	20,659,527			20,659,527		20,659,527
Value of shares issued on conversion of convertible notes	4,507,109			4,507,109		4,507,109
Share-based payments		303,522		303,522		303,522
Transaction costs on placement of shares		57,736		57,736		57,736
	25,166,636	361,258		25,527,894		25,527,894
<b>Balance at June 30, 2015</b>	115,247,128	4,697,403	(100,985,283)	18,959,248		18,959,248
Loss for the year			(8,458,965)	(8,458,965)		(8,458,965)
Other comprehensive profit		1,307,219		1,307,219		1,307,219
<b>Total comprehensive loss</b>		1,307,219	(8,458,965)	(7,151,746)		(7,151,746)
<b>Transactions with owners in their capacity as owners</b>						
Value of shares issued on conversion of convertible notes	25,448			25,448		25,448
Share-based payments		50,239		50,239		50,239
	25,448	50,239		75,687		75,687
<b>Balance at June 30, 2016</b>	115,272,576	6,054,861	(109,444,248)	11,883,189		11,883,189
Loss for the year			(8,403,826)	(8,403,826)		(8,403,826)
Other comprehensive loss		(130,655)		(130,655)		(130,655)
<b>Total comprehensive loss</b>		(130,655)	(8,403,826)	(8,534,481)		(8,534,481)
<b>Transactions with owners in their capacity as owners</b>						
Contributions of equity (net of transaction costs)	6,814,939			6,814,939		6,814,939
Share-based payments		120,287		120,287		120,287
Share facility fee rebate	295,110			295,110		295,110
	7,110,049	120,287		7,230,336		7,230,336
<b>Balance at June 30, 2017</b>	122,382,625	6,044,493	(117,848,074)	10,579,044		10,579,044

*The above consolidated statements of changes in equity should be read in conjunction with the accompanying notes.*



Table of Contents

**NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

For the year ended June 30, 2017

**1. CORPORATE INFORMATION**

The Financial Report of Genetic Technologies Limited (the Company) for the year ended June 30, 2017 was authorized for issue in accordance with a resolution of the Directors dated October 31, 2017. Genetic Technologies Limited is incorporated in Australia and is a company limited by shares. The Directors have the power to amend and reissue the financial statements.

The Company's ordinary shares are publicly traded on the Australian Securities Exchange under the symbol GTG and, via Level II American Depository Receipts, on the NASDAQ Capital Market under the ticker GENE.

**2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

**(a) Basis of preparation**

This general purpose Financial Report has been prepared in accordance with Australian Accounting Standards, other authoritative pronouncements of the Australian Accounting Standards Board and the *Corporations Act 2001*.

*Compliance with IFRS*

The Financial Report complies with Australian Accounting Standards as issued by the Australian Accounting Standards Board and International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS) as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board.

*Historical cost convention*

These financial statements have been prepared under the historical cost convention except for financial assets and liabilities (including derivative instruments) which are measured at fair value.

*Critical accounting estimates*

The preparation of financial statements requires the use of certain critical accounting estimates. It also requires Management to exercise its judgement in the process of applying the Group's accounting policies. The areas involving a higher degree of judgement or complexity, or areas where assumptions and estimates are critical to the financial statements, are disclosed in Note 3.

**Going concern**

For the year ending June 30, 2017, the Group incurred a total comprehensive loss of \$8,534,481 (2016: \$7,151,746) and net cash outflow from operations of \$6,813,639 (2016: \$7,726,838). As at June 30, 2017 the Company held total cash and cash equivalents of \$10,988,255.

In light of these historical cash outflows, and further expected cash outflows from operations in the next twelve months, the Directors have initiated a comprehensive strategic review of the Group's operations. This review, which commenced during the first half of the 2018 financial year, is exploring a wide range of possible strategic alternatives designed to maximise near and long-term value for the Group's shareholders (the Group has retained Roth Capital Partners LLC to serve as a financial advisor in the process). The strategic review will also give consideration to future cash needs to ensure the Group continues to hold adequate levels of cash resources to meet creditors and other commitments.

The longer-term viability of the Group and its ability to continue as a going concern and meet its debts and commitments as they fall due is dependent on the successful outcome of the strategic review.

Due to the uncertainty surrounding the outcome of the strategic review, and the timing, quantum or the ability to raise additional funds if identified in the strategic review, there is a material uncertainty that may cast significant doubt on the Group's ability to continue as a going concern and therefore, that it may be unable to realise its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business. However, the Directors believe that the Group will be successful in the above matters and accordingly, have prepared the financial report on a going concern basis. As such no adjustments have been made to the financial statements relating to the recoverability and classification of the asset carrying amounts or classification of liabilities that might be necessary should the Group not be able to continue as a going concern.

Table of Contents

**2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)**

**(a) Basis of preparation (cont.)**

**Going Concern (cont.)**

As a U.S. SEC registrant, the Company is required to have its financial statements audited in accordance with Public Company Oversight Board ( PCAOB ) standards. References in these IFRS financial statements to matters that may cast significant doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern also raise substantial doubt as contemplated by the PCAOB standards.

**(b) New accounting standards and interpretations**

**(i) Standards and Interpretations affecting amounts reported in the current period (and/or prior period)**

The group has applied the following standards and amendments for the first time for their annual reporting period commencing July 1, 2016:

- AASB 2016-1 Amendments to Australian Accounting Standard AASB 112/IAS 12 Recognition of Deferred Tax Assets for Unrealized Losses
- AASB 2016-2 Amendments to Australian Accounting Standard AASB 107/IAS7 Disclosure Initiative
- AASB 2016-5 Amendments to Australian Accounting Standard AASB 2/IFRS 2 Classification and Measurement of Share-based Payment Transactions

The adoption of these standards did not have any impact on the current period or any prior period and is not likely to affect future periods.

**(ii) Standards and Interpretations in issue but not yet adopted**

In respect of the year ended June 30, 2017, the Group has assessed all new Australian accounting standards, and the IFRS equivalent, mandatory for adoption during the current year, noting no new standards which would have a material effect on the disclosure in these financial statements. There has been no effect on the profit and loss or the financial position of the Group. Certain new accounting standards and interpretations have been published that are not mandatory for June 30, 2017 reporting periods.

The Group's assessment of the impact of these new standards and interpretations is set out below.

Title of Standard	Summary and impact on Group's financial statements	Application date of the standard	Application date for Group for financial year ending
IFRS 9 Financial Instruments	<p>IFRS 9 Financial Instruments replaces IFRS 139 and addresses and classification, measurement and derecognition of financial assets and liabilities. It also addresses the new hedge accounting requirements, including changes to hedge effectiveness, treatment of hedging costs and risk components that can be hedged.</p> <p>IFRS 9 introduces a new expected loss impairment model that will require entities to account for expected credit losses at the time of recognizing the asset. The Group does not expect the adoption of the new standard to have a material impact on its classification and measurement of the financial assets and liabilities or its results on adoption of the new impairment model.</p> <p>The new standard will result in extended disclosures in the financial</p>	January 1, 2018	June 30, 2019



Table of Contents

	statements. The Group has decided not to early adopt AASB 9.		
IFRS 15 Revenue from Contracts with Customers	IFRS 15 provides a single, principles based five-step model to be applied to all contracts with customers. The five steps in the model are as follows:  <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. identify contracts with customers</li> <li>2. identify the separate performance obligations</li> <li>3. determine the transaction price of the contract</li> <li>4. allocate the transaction price to each of the separate performance obligations, and</li> <li>5. Recognize the revenue as each performance obligation is satisfied.</li> </ol> <p>Guidance is provided on topics such as the point in which revenue is recognized, accounting for variable consideration, costs of fulfilling and obtaining a contract and various related matters. The Group is assessing the impact of the new standard on its revenue recognition policy.</p>	January 1, 2018	June 30, 2019
IFRS 16 Leases	IFRS 16 will primarily affect the accounting by lessees and will result in the recognition of almost all leases on the balance sheet. The standard removes the current distinction between operating & financing leases and requires recognition of an asset (the right to use the leased item) and financial liability to pay rentals for almost all of the lease contracts. The accounting by lessors, however, will not significantly change  <p>The new standard will result in extended disclosures in the financial statements. The Group has decided not to early adopt IFRS 16</p>	January 1, 2019	June 30, 2020

There are no other standards that are not yet effective and that are expected to have a material impact on the entity in the current or future reporting periods and on foreseeable future transactions.

(c) **Principles of consolidation**

*Subsidiaries*

The consolidated financial statements incorporate the assets and liabilities of all subsidiaries of Genetic Technologies Limited (the Company or Parent Entity ) as at June 30, 2017 and the results of all subsidiaries for the year then ended. Genetic Technologies Limited and its subsidiaries together are referred to in this Financial Report as the Group or the Consolidated Entity .

Subsidiaries are all entities (including structured entities) over which the group has control. The group controls an entity when the group is exposed to, or has rights to, variable returns from its involvement within the entity and has the ability to affect those returns through its power to direct the activities of the entity. Subsidiaries are fully consolidated from the date on which control is transferred to the Group. They are de-consolidated from the date that control ceases.

Intercompany transactions, balances and unrealised gains / losses on transactions between Group companies are eliminated. Unrealised losses are also eliminated unless the transaction provides evidence of the impairment of the asset transferred. Accounting policies of subsidiaries have been changed where necessary to ensure consistency with the Group's policies. Non-controlling interests in the results and equity of subsidiaries are shown separately in the consolidated statement of comprehensive income, consolidated balance sheet and consolidated statements of changes in equity, respectively.

**(d) Segment reporting**

Operating segments are reported in a manner consistent with the internal reporting provided to the chief operating decision maker. The chief operating decision maker, who is responsible for allocating resources and assessing the performance of the operating segments, has been identified as the Chief Executive Officer.

**(e) Parent entity financial information**

The financial information for the parent entity, Genetic Technologies Limited has been prepared on the same basis as the consolidated financial statements, except that investments in subsidiaries are accounted for at cost in the financial statements of Genetic Technologies Limited. Loans to subsidiaries are written down to their recoverable value as at balance date.

Table of Contents

**2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)**

**(f) Foreign currency translation**

The functional and presentation currency of Genetic Technologies Limited and its Australian subsidiaries is the Australian dollar (AUD). Transactions in foreign currencies are initially recorded in the functional currency at the exchange rates ruling at the date of the transaction. Monetary assets and liabilities which are denominated in foreign currencies are retranslated at the rate of exchange ruling at the balance sheet date. All differences are taken to the statement of comprehensive income.

Non-monetary items that are measured in terms of historical cost in a foreign currency are translated using the exchange rate ruling at the date of the initial transaction. Non-monetary items measured at fair value in a foreign currency are translated using the exchange rates ruling at the date when the fair value was determined. The functional currencies of the Company's three overseas subsidiaries are as follows:

GeneType AG Swiss francs (CHF)

GeneType Corporation United States dollars (USD)

Phenogen Sciences Inc. United States dollars (USD)

As at the reporting date, the assets and liabilities of these subsidiaries are translated into the presentation currency of Genetic Technologies Limited at the rate of exchange ruling at the balance sheet date and the statement of comprehensive income is translated at the weighted average exchange rates for the period unless this is not a reasonable approximation of the cumulative effect of the rates prevailing on the transaction dates, in which case income and expenses are translated at the dates of the transactions. The exchange differences arising on the retranslation are recognized in other comprehensive income and taken directly to a separate component of equity. On disposal of a foreign entity, the deferred cumulative amount recognized in equity relating to that particular foreign operation is recognized in the statement of comprehensive income.

**(g) Earnings per share ( EPS )**

Basic EPS is calculated by dividing the profit attributable to owners of the Company, excluding any costs of servicing equity other than ordinary shares, by the weighted average number of ordinary shares outstanding during the financial year. Diluted EPS adjusts the figures used in the determination of basic EPS to take into account the after income tax effect of interest and other financing costs associated with dilutive potential ordinary shares and the weighted average number of ordinary shares that would have been outstanding assuming the conversion of all dilutive potential ordinary shares.

**(h) Revenue recognition**

Revenues are recognized to the extent that it is probable that the economic benefits will flow to the entity and the revenues can be reliably measured. Revenues are recognized at the fair value of the consideration received or receivable net of the amounts of Goods and Services Tax. The following recognition criteria must also be met before revenue is recognized:

*Genetic testing revenues*

The Company operates facilities which provide genetic testing services. The Company recognises revenue from the provision of these services when the services have been completed.

*License fees, royalties and annuities received*

The Company licenses the use of its patented genetic technologies. License fee income is recorded either upfront where the Group has no future obligations or over the license term where the Group has future obligations based on the execution of a binding agreement. The Group does not grant refunds to its customers. Royalties and annuities arising from the above licenses are recognized when earned in accordance with the substance of the agreement, in cases where no future performance is required by the Company and collection is reasonably assured.

*Interest received*

Revenue is recognized as the interest accrues using the effective interest method.

*Research and development tax incentive*

The Australian government replaced the research and development tax concession with research and development (R&D) tax incentive from July 1, 2011. The R&D tax incentive applies to expenditure incurred and the use of depreciating assets in an income year commencing on or after July 1, 2011. A refundable tax offset is available to eligible companies with an annual aggregate turnover of less than \$20 million. Management has assessed the Group's activities and expenditure to determine which are likely to be eligible under the incentive scheme. The Group accounts for the R&D tax incentive as a government grant. The grant is recognized as other income over the period in which the R&D expense is recognized.

Table of Contents

**2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)**

**(i) Share-based payment transactions**

The fair value of options granted under an Employee Option Plan is recognized as an employee benefit expense with a corresponding increase in equity. The fair value is measured at grant date and recognized over the vesting period over which all of the specified vesting conditions are to be satisfied. The fair value at grant date is determined by management with the assistance of an independent valuer, using a Black-Scholes option pricing model or a Monte Carlo simulation analysis. The total amount to be expensed is determined by reference to the fair value of the options granted;

- including any market performance conditions (e.g. the entities share price)
- excluding the impact of any service and non-market performance vesting conditions (e.g. remaining an employee over a specified time period)

The cumulative employee benefits expense recognized at each reporting date until vesting date reflects (i) the extent to which the vesting period has expired; and (ii) the number of awards that, in the opinion of the Directors of the Group, will ultimately vest. This opinion is formed based on the best information available at balance date.

Where the terms of an equity-settled award are modified, as a minimum an expense is recognized as if the terms had not been modified. In addition, an expense is recognized for any increase in the value of the transaction as a result of the modification, as at the date of modification. Where appropriate, the dilutive effect of outstanding options is reflected as additional share dilution in the computation of diluted earnings per share. The Company's policy is to treat the options of terminated employees as forfeitures.

**(j) Income tax**

The income tax expense or revenue for the period is the tax payable on the current period's taxable income based on the national income tax rate for each jurisdiction adjusted by changes in deferred tax assets and liabilities attributable to temporary differences and unused tax losses.

The current income tax charge is calculated on the basis of the tax laws enacted or substantively enacted at the end of the reporting period in the countries where the company's subsidiaries and associates operate and generate taxable income.

Deferred income tax is provided in full, using the liability method, on temporary differences arising between the tax bases of assets and liabilities and their carrying amounts in the consolidated financial statements. However, the deferred income tax is not accounted for if it arises from initial recognition of an asset or liability in a transaction other than a business combination that, at the time of the transaction, affects neither accounting nor taxable profit or loss. Deferred income tax is determined using tax rates (and laws) that have been enacted or substantially enacted by the balance sheet date and are expected to apply when the related deferred income tax asset is realised or the deferred income tax liability is settled. Deferred tax assets are recognised for deductible temporary differences and unused tax losses only if it is probable that future taxable amounts will be available to utilise those temporary differences and losses.

Deferred tax assets are recognised for deductible temporary differences and unused tax losses only if it is probable that future taxable amounts will be available to utilise those temporary differences and losses. Deferred tax liabilities and assets are not recognised for temporary differences between the carrying amount and tax bases of investments in controlled entities where the parent entity is able to control the timing of the reversal of the temporary differences and it is probable that the differences will not reverse in the foreseeable future. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are offset when there is a legally enforceable right to offset current tax assets and liabilities and when the deferred tax balances relate to the same taxation authority. Current tax assets and tax liabilities are offset where the entity has a legally enforceable right to offset and intends either to settle on a net basis, or to realise the asset and settle the liability simultaneously. Current and deferred tax balances attributable to amounts recognised directly in equity are also recognised directly in equity. Current and deferred tax is recognised in profit or loss, except to the extent that it relates to items recognised in other comprehensive income or directly in equity. In this case, the tax is also recognised in other comprehensive income or directly in equity, respectively.

*Tax consolidation legislation*

Genetic Technologies Limited ( GTG ) and its wholly-owned Australian-resident subsidiaries have implemented the tax consolidation legislation. The head entity, GTG, and the subsidiaries in the tax consolidated group account for their own current and deferred tax amounts. These tax amounts are measured as if each entity in the tax consolidated group continues to be a stand-alone taxpayer in its own right

Table of Contents

**2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)**

In addition to its own current and deferred tax amounts, GTG also recognises the current tax assets / liabilities and the deferred tax assets arising from unused tax losses and tax credits assumed from subsidiaries in the tax consolidated group. Assets or liabilities arising under tax funding agreements with the tax consolidated entities are recognised as amounts receivable from or payable to other entities in the Group. Any difference between the amounts assumed and amounts receivable or payable under the tax funding agreements are recognised as a contribution to (or distribution from) wholly-owned tax subsidiaries.

**(k) Other taxes**

Revenues, expenses and assets are recognized net of the amount of Goods and Services Tax (GST) except where the GST incurred on a purchase of goods and services is not recoverable from the taxation authority, in which case the GST is recognized as part of the cost of acquisition of the asset or as part of the expense item as applicable; and receivables and payables are stated with the amount of GST included. The net amount of GST recoverable from, or payable to, the taxation authority is included as part of receivables or payables in the balance sheet. Cash flows are included in the cash flow statement on a gross basis and the GST component arising from investing and financing activities, which is recoverable from / payable to the taxation authority, are classified as operating cash flows.

**(l) Withholding tax**

The Group generates revenues from the granting of licenses to parties resident in overseas countries. Such revenues may, in certain circumstances, be subject to the deduction of local withholding tax. In such cases, revenues are recorded net of any withholding tax deducted.

**(m) Finance costs**

Finance costs are recognized using the effective interest rate method.

**(n) Cash and cash equivalents**

Cash and cash equivalents in the balance sheet comprise cash at bank and in hand and short-term deposits with an original maturity of 3 months or less. For the purposes of the cash flow statement, cash and cash equivalents consist of cash and cash equivalents as defined above. Cash at bank earns interest at floating rates based on daily bank deposit rates. Short-term deposits are made for varying periods, depending on the immediate cash requirements of the Group, and earn interest at the respective short-term deposit rates.

**(o) Trade and other receivables**

Trade receivables, which are non-interest bearing and generally have terms of between 30 to 90 days, are recognized and carried at original invoice amount less an allowance for any uncollectible amounts. An allowance for doubtful debts is made when there is objective evidence that a receivable is impaired. Such evidence includes an assessment of the debtor's ability and willingness to pay the amount due. The amount of the allowance/impairment loss is measured as the difference between the carrying amount of the trade receivables and the estimated future cash flows expected to be received from the relevant debtors.

**(p) Inventories**

Inventories principally comprise laboratory and other supplies and are valued at the lower of cost and net realizable value. Inventory costs are recognized as the purchase price of items from suppliers plus freight inwards and any applicable landing charges. Costs are assigned on the basis of weighted average cost.

**(q) Property, plant and equipment**

Plant and equipment is stated at cost less accumulated depreciation and any impairment in value. Depreciation is calculated on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life of the respective asset as follows:

Laboratory equipment 3 to 5 years

Computer equipment 3 years

Office equipment 3 to 5 years

Leasehold improvements lease term, being between 1 and 3 years

Costs relating to day-to-day servicing of any item of property, plant and equipment are recognized in profit or loss as incurred. The cost of replacing larger parts of some items of property, plant and equipment are capitalized when incurred and depreciated over the period until their next scheduled replacement, with the replacement parts being subsequently written off.





Table of Contents

**2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)**

**(r) Intangible assets**

*Patents*

Patents held by the Group are used in the licensing, testing and research areas and are carried at cost and amortized on a straight-line basis over their useful lives, being 10 years. External costs incurred in filing and protecting patent applications, for which no future benefit is reasonably assured, are expensed as incurred.

*Research and development costs*

Costs relating to research activities are expensed as incurred. An intangible asset arising from development expenditure on an internal project is recognized only when the Group can demonstrate the technical feasibility of completing the intangible asset so that it will be available for use or sale, its intention to complete and its ability to use or sell the asset, how the asset will generate future economic benefits, the availability of resources to complete the development and the ability to measure reliably the expenditure attributable to the intangible asset during its development. To date, all development costs have been expensed as incurred as their recoverability cannot be regarded as assured.

**(s) Impairment of assets**

The Group assesses at each reporting date whether there is an indication that an asset may be impaired. If any such indication exists, the Group makes an estimate of the asset's recoverable amount. An asset's recoverable amount is the higher of its fair value less costs of disposal or its value in use and is determined for an individual asset, unless the asset does not generate cash inflows that are largely independent of those from other assets or groups of assets and the asset's value-in-use cannot be estimated to be close to its fair value. In such cases, the asset is tested for impairment as part of the cash-generating unit to which it belongs. When the carrying amount of an asset or cash-generating unit exceeds its recoverable amount, the asset or cash-generating unit is considered impaired and is written down to its recoverable amount.

In assessing value in use, the estimated future cash flows are discounted to their present value using a pre-tax discount rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the asset. Impairment losses relating to operations are recognized in those expense categories consistent with the function of the impaired asset unless the asset is carried at its revalued amount, in which case the impairment loss is treated as a revaluation decrease.

An assessment is made at each reporting date as to whether there is any indication that previously recognized impairment losses may no longer exist or may have decreased. If such indication exists, the recoverable amount is estimated. A previously recognized impairment loss is

reversed only if there has been a change in the estimates used to determine the asset's recoverable amount since the last impairment loss was recognized. If so, the carrying amount of the asset is increased to its recoverable amount. The increased amount cannot exceed the carrying amount that would have been determined, net of depreciation, had no impairment loss been recognized for the asset in prior years. Such reversal is recognized in profit or loss unless it reverses a decrement previously charged to equity, in which case the reversal is treated as a revaluation increase. After such a reversal, the depreciation charge is adjusted in future periods to allocate the asset's revised carrying amount, less any residual value, on a systematic basis over its remaining useful life.

**(t) Employee benefits**

*(i) Short-term obligations*

Provision is made for employee benefits accumulated as a result of employees rendering services up to the reporting date. These benefits include wages and salaries, annual leave and long service leave. Liabilities arising in respect of wages and salaries, expected to be settled within twelve months of the reporting date are measured at their nominal amounts based on remuneration rates which are expected to be paid when the liability is settled. Expenses for non-accumulating sick leave are recognized when the leave is taken during the year and are measured at rates paid or payable.

*ii) Other long-term employee benefit obligations*

The liabilities for long service leave and annual leave are not expected to be settled wholly within 12 months after the end of the reporting period in which the employee renders the related service. They are therefore recognized in the provision for employee benefits and measured as the present value of expected future payments to be made in respect of services provided by employees up to the end of the reporting period using the projected unit credit method. Consideration is given to expected future wage and salary levels, experience of employee departures and periods of service. Expected future payments are discounted using market yields at the end of the reporting period of corporate bonds with terms and currencies that match, as closely as possible, the estimated future cash outflows.

Table of Contents

**2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)**

**(t) Employee benefits (cont.)**

The obligations are presented as current liabilities in the balance sheet if the entity does not have an unconditional right to defer settlement for at least twelve months after the reporting period, regardless of when the actual settlement is expected to occur.

*(iii) Retirement benefit obligations*

The Group does not have any defined benefit funds. Statutory contributions to defined contribution superannuation funds are recognized as an expense as they become payable. Prepaid contributions are recognized as an asset to the extent that a cash refund or a reduction in the future payments is available. Statutory contributions are legally enforceable in Australia.

**(u) Provisions**

Provisions for legal claims, service claims and make good obligations are recognized when the Group has a present obligation (legal or constructive) as a result of a past event, it is probable that an outflow of resources embodying economic benefits will be required to settle the obligation and a reliable estimate can be made of the amount of the obligation. Where the Group expects some or all of a provision to be reimbursed, the reimbursement is recognized as a separate asset but only when the reimbursement is virtually certain. The expense relating to any provision is presented in the statement of comprehensive income net of any reimbursement.

If the effect of the time value of money is material, provisions are determined by discounting the expected future cash flows at a pre-tax rate that reflects market assessments of the time value of money and, where appropriate, the risks specific to the liability. Where discounting is used, the increase in the provision due to the passage of time is recognized as a finance cost.

**(v) Trade and other payables**

Trade payables and other payables are carried at amortized cost and represent liabilities for goods and services provided to the Group prior to the end of the financial year that are unpaid and arise when the Group becomes obliged to make future payments in respect of the purchase of these goods and services. Trade payables and other payables generally have terms of between 30 and 60 days.

**(w) Contributed equity**

Issued and paid up capital is recognized at the fair value of the consideration received by the Company. Transaction costs arising on the issue of ordinary shares are recognized directly in equity as a deduction, net of tax, of the proceeds received. The Company has a share-based payment option plan under which options to subscribe for the Company's shares have been granted to certain executives and other employees.

**(x) Financial assets and liabilities**

During the year ended June 30, 2015, the Group acquired both a financial asset and liability at fair value through profit or loss. Financial assets and liabilities at fair value through profit or loss are initially recognized at fair value on the date a contract is entered into and are subsequently premeasured to their fair value and at the end of each reporting period. The accounting for subsequent changes in fair value is recognized in profit or loss.

**(y) Business combinations**

The acquisition method of accounting is used to account for all business combinations, including business combinations involving entities or businesses under common control, regardless of whether equity instruments or other assets are acquired. The consideration transferred for the acquisition of a subsidiary comprises the fair values of the assets transferred, the liabilities incurred and the equity interests issued by the Group. The consideration transferred also includes the fair value of any contingent consideration arrangement and the fair value of any pre-existing equity interest in the subsidiary. All costs relating to acquisitions are expensed as incurred.

Identifiable assets acquired and liabilities and contingent liabilities assumed in a business combination are, with limited exceptions, measured initially at their fair values at the acquisition date. On an acquisition-by-acquisition basis, the Group recognizes any non-controlling interest in the acquiree either at fair value or at the non-controlling interest's proportionate share of the acquiree's net identifiable assets.

The excess of the consideration transferred, the amount of any non-controlling interest in the acquiree and the acquisition-date fair value of any previous equity interest in the acquiree over the fair value of the Group's share of the net identifiable assets acquired is recorded as goodwill. If those amounts are less than the fair value of the net identifiable assets of the subsidiary

Table of Contents

**2. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES (cont.)**

**(y) Business combinations (cont.)**

acquired and the measurement of all amounts has been reviewed, the difference is recognized directly in profit or loss as a bargain purchase.

Where settlement of any part of cash consideration is deferred, the amounts payable in the future are discounted to their present value as at the date of exchange. The discount rate used is the entity's incremental borrowing rate, being the rate at which a similar borrowing could be obtained from an independent financier under comparable terms and conditions.

**3. CRITICAL ACCOUNTING ESTIMATES AND JUDGEMENTS**

Estimates and judgements are evaluated and based on historical experience and other factors, including expectations of future events that may have a financial impact on the Company and that are believed to be reasonable under the circumstances.

**Critical accounting estimates and assumptions**

The carrying amounts of certain assets and liabilities are often determined based on estimates and assumptions of future events. The key estimates and assumptions that have a significant risk of causing a material adjustment to the carrying value of certain assets and liabilities within the next annual reporting period are set out below.

*Impairment of intangible assets*

The Group determines whether intangible assets are impaired on at least an annual basis, in accordance with the accounting policies stated in Note 2(s). At June 30, 2017, the Company has recognised an impairment expense of \$544,694. The assumptions used in the estimation of the recoverable and carrying amounts as well as the impairment amount of intangible assets are as detailed in note 15 below.

*Share-based payments transactions*

The Group measures the cost of equity-settled transactions with employees by reference to the value of the equity instruments at the date on which they are granted. Management determined the fair value by engaging an independent valuer using a Black-Scholes and Monte Carlo simulation options pricing model.

*Useful lives of assets*

The estimation of the useful lives of assets has been based on historical experience as well as lease terms (for leased equipment) and patent terms (for patents). In addition, the condition of the assets is assessed at least annually and considered against the remaining useful life and adjustments to useful lives are made when considered necessary.

*Revenue from the sale of BREVAGen tests*

In accordance with revenue recognition principles, the Group recognizes the revenue from the sale of BREVAGen™ and BREVAGenplus® test on an accruals basis. This requires the Group to estimate the amount of revenue expected to be received based on the historical data of amounts received from tests sold since the launch of BREVAGen™ and BREVAGenplus®.

Table of Contents**4. COST OF SALES**

	2017 \$	Consolidated 2016 \$	2015 \$
Inventories used	172,070	159,256	462,908
Direct labour costs	152,767	199,114	347,745
Depreciation expense	71,139	60,249	55,818
Inventories written off (1)	96,441	324,441	24,772
Total cost of sales	492,417	743,060	891,243

(1) Inventories written off include \$53,856 (2016: \$218,178 and 2015: \$nil) of items that expired during the year.

**5. OTHER REVENUE**

License fees received (2)	252,707	938,471
Royalties and annuities received (3)	47,841	88,680
Total other revenue	300,548	1,027,151

(2) License fees received in 2016 included \$149,837 (2015: \$781,108) of licensing income from Applera Corporation. This agreement ended in December 2015.

(3) Derived under the Group's non-coding assertion programme that was discontinued during 2015

**6. NON OPERATING INCOME AND EXPENDITURE**

Net profit on disposal of plant and equipment	52,188	7,132	3,843
Research and development tax incentive	253,159	359,803	111,188
Interest income	38,765	67,100	39,951
Rental income		58,002	215,575
Total non operating income and expenditure	344,112	492,037	370,557

**7. GAIN ON SALE OF BUSINESS**

Proceeds from sale of business	2,100,895
Trade and other receivables	(190,990)



Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

Prepayments and other assets	(220,785)
Net value of fixed assets	(176,065)
Goodwill	(315,388)
Deferred revenue	51,952
Current provisions	120,989
Long term provisions	26,190
Total gain on sale of business	1,396,798

On November 19, 2014, the Company announced that it had completed the sale of its Heritage Australian Genetics business to Specialist Diagnostics Services Ltd ( SDS ), the wholly owned pathology subsidiary of Primary Health Care Ltd. Under the terms of sale, SDS acquired the Australian Genetics business for \$2,100,895 (net of employee entitlements and inclusive of GST) in cash. The gain on disposal as recognized in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income is \$1,396,798 the details of which are noted above.

Table of Contents**8. EXPENSES**

	<b>2017</b>	<b>Consolidated</b>	<b>2015</b>
	\$	2016	\$
		\$	\$
Amortization of intangible assets	63,783	127,564	127,564
Depreciation of fixed assets	307,828	262,510	104,639
Net foreign currency losses	175,871	427,574	200,243
Employee benefits expenses	3,594,936	3,774,770	5,470,007
Operating lease expenses	310,413	312,586	404,638
Research and development expenses	418,598	395,539	728,592

F-16

Table of Contents**9. INCOME TAX****Reconciliation of income tax expense to prima facie tax payable**

	2017 \$	Consolidated 2016 \$	2015 \$
Loss before income tax expense	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)
Tax at the Australian tax rate of 27.50% (2016: 28.50% and 2015: 30%)	(2,311,052)	(2,410,805)	(2,643,051)
Tax effect amounts which are not deductible / (taxable) in calculating taxable income			
Net impairment losses and other write-downs			98
Share-based payments expense	33,079	14,318	91,057
Fair value (gains)/ loss on financial liabilities at fair value through profit or loss			(104,774)
Research and development tax incentive	108,163	116,800	78,673
Disposal of Heritage business			41,091
Tax effect of inter-company transactions			5,370
Withholding tax expense		849	5,484
Other non-deductible items	1,257	1,450	2,032
Other assessable items	81,155		
	(2,087,398)	(2,277,388)	(2,524,020)
Difference in overseas tax rates	(96,775)	(225,070)	(138,687)
Under /(over) provision	(75,054)	10,583	(7,849)
Research and development tax credit	(69,619)	(102,544)	(33,356)
Tax losses not recognized	2,328,846	2,594,419	2,703,912
Income tax expense			
<b>Net deferred tax assets</b>			
<b>Deferred tax assets not recognized</b>			
ImmunAid option fee			150,000
Property, plant & equipment	2,802	3,517	9,067
Capital raising costs	320,417	531,646	849,649
Applera settlement			44,945
Intangible assets	2,003,505	1,978,065	2,185,263
Provisions	333,103	209,643	226,568
Other			86,830
Total deferred tax assets	2,659,827	2,722,871	3,552,322
<b>Deferred tax liabilities not recognized</b>			
Prepayments			355
Total deferred tax liabilities			355
Net deferred tax assets on temporary differences not brought to account	(2,659,827)	(2,722,871)	(3,551,967)
Total net deferred tax assets			

Table of Contents**9. INCOME TAX (cont.)****Tax losses**

	<b>2017</b>	<b>Consolidated</b>	<b>2015</b>
	<b>\$</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>\$</b>
		<b>\$</b>	
Unused tax losses for which no deferred tax asset has been recognized	80,706,629	74,107,688	63,780,030
Potential tax benefit @ 27.50% (2016: 28.50% and 2015 30%)	22,194,323	21,120,691	19,134,010

Subject to the Group continuing to meet the relevant statutory tests, the tax losses are available for offset against future taxable income.

At June 30, 2017, the group had a potential tax benefit related to tax losses carried forward of \$22,194,323. Such amount includes net losses of \$6,452,988 related to subsidiaries in the United States (U.S.) which would expire after 20 years starting in 2030. The remaining tax losses carried forward of \$15,741,335 are indefinite and are attributable to the Group's operations in Australia. As such the total unused tax losses available to the Group, equal \$22,194,323.

As at balance date, there are unrecognized tax losses with a benefit of approximately \$22,194,323 (2016: \$21,120,691 and 2015: \$19,134,010) that have not been recognized as a deferred tax asset to the Group. These unrecognized deferred tax assets will only be obtained if:

- (a) The Group companies derive future assessable income of a nature and amount sufficient to enable the benefits to be realized;
- (b) The Group companies continue to comply with the conditions for deductibility imposed by the law; and
- (c) No changes in tax legislation adversely affect the Group companies from realizing the benefit.

**Tax consolidation legislation**

Genetic Technologies Limited and its wholly-owned Australian subsidiaries implemented the tax consolidation legislation as from July 1, 2003. The accounting policy in relation to this legislation is set out in Note 2(j).

The entities in the tax consolidated group have entered into a Tax Sharing Agreement which, in the opinion of the Directors, limits the joint and several liabilities of the wholly-owned entities in the case of a default by the head entity, Genetic Technologies Limited.

The entities have also entered into a Tax Funding Agreement under which the wholly-owned entities fully compensate Genetic Technologies Limited for any current tax payable assumed and are compensated by Genetic Technologies Limited for any current tax receivable and deferred tax assets relating to unused tax losses or unused tax credits that are transferred to Genetic Technologies Limited under the tax consolidation legislation. The funding amounts are determined by reference to the amounts recognized in the respective subsidiaries' financial statements.

The amounts receivable or payable under the Tax Funding Agreement are due upon receipt of the funding advice from the head entity, which is issued as soon as practicable after the end of each financial year.

As at June 30, 2017, there are no unrecognised temporary differences associated with the Group's investments in subsidiaries, as the Group has no liability for additional taxation should unremitted earnings be remitted (2016: \$nil).

## 10. LOSS PER SHARE

The following reflects the income and share data used in the calculations of basic and diluted loss per share:

Loss for the year attributable to the owners of Genetic Technologies Limited	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)
Weighted average number of ordinary shares used in calculating loss per share	2,121,638,888	1,715,214,158	1,072,803,358

*Note: None of the 75,102,778 (2016: 53,852,778 and 2015 24,241,667) options over the Company's ordinary shares that were outstanding as at the reporting date are considered to be dilutive for the purposes of calculating diluted earnings per share.*

Table of Contents**11. CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS**

	2017	Consolidated 2016	2015
	\$	\$	\$
<b>Reconciliation of cash and cash equivalents</b>			
Cash at bank and on hand	10,988,255	11,179,687	18,341,357
Total cash and cash equivalents	10,988,255	11,179,687	18,341,357
<b>Reconciliation of loss for the year</b>			
Reconciliation of loss for the year after income tax to net cash flows used in operating activities is as follows:			
Loss for the year after income tax	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)	(8,810,170)
<i>Adjust for non-cash items</i>			
Amortization and depreciation expenses	371,611	390,074	232,203
Impairment of intangible assets	544,694		
Interest on convertible notes converted to shares			73,618
Share-based payments expense	120,287	50,239	303,522
Non-cash licensing revenue			(245,500)
Non-cash rental income		(58,002)	
Net (gain)/loss on sale of business			(1,396,798)
Fair value gains on financial assets at fair value through profit or loss			(349,246)
Net (profit) / loss on disposal of plant and equipment	(52,188)	(7,132)	(3,843)
Net foreign exchange (gains) / losses	175,038	412,579	200,243
<i>Adjust for changes in assets and liabilities</i>			
(Increase) / decrease in trade and other receivables	204,501	84,178	152,348
(Increase) / decrease in prepayments and other assets	103,488	189,178	(312,714)
Increase / (decrease) in financial assets at fair value through profit or loss			795,533
Increase / (decrease) in trade and other payables	60,120	(342,273)	(436,249)
Increase / (decrease) in provisions	62,636	13,286	105,525
Net cash flows from / (used in) operating activities	(6,813,639)	(7,726,838)	(9,691,528)
<b>Financing facilities available</b>			
As at June 30, 2017, the following financing facilities had been negotiated and were available:			
<i>Total facilities</i>			
Credit cards	306,128	311,269	306,750
<i>Facilities used as at reporting date</i>			
Credit cards	(12,428)	(32,051)	(25,708)
<i>Facilities unused as at reporting date</i>			
Credit cards	293,700	279,218	281,042

Table of Contents**12. TRADE AND OTHER RECEIVABLES (CURRENT)**

	<b>2017</b>	<b>Consolidated</b>	<b>2016</b>
	<b>\$</b>		<b>\$</b>
Trade receivables	200,837		392,521
Less: provision for doubtful debts			
Net trade receivables	200,837		392,521
Other receivables	225,435		238,252
Total net current trade and other receivables	426,272		630,773

*Note: Trade and other receivables for the Group include amounts due in US dollars of USD 153,829 (2016: USD 291,540).*

Refer Note 30 for details of aging, interest rate and credit risks applicable to trade and other receivables for which, due to their short-term nature, their carrying value approximates their fair value.

**13. PREPAYMENTS AND OTHER ASSETS (CURRENT)**

Prepayments	136,923	149,459
Inventories at the lower of cost and net realizable value	76,822	166,942
Performance bond and deposits	3,377	4,209
Total current prepayments and other assets	217,122	320,610

Table of Contents**14. PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT**

	2017	Consolidated 2016
	\$	\$
Laboratory equipment, at cost	1,451,389	1,287,609
Less: accumulated depreciation	(1,209,553)	(1,056,124)
Net laboratory equipment	241,836	231,485
Computer equipment, at cost	607,165	547,176
Less: accumulated depreciation	(523,278)	(487,574)
Net computer equipment	83,887	59,602
Office equipment, at cost	167,564	167,564
Less: accumulated depreciation	(165,805)	(164,527)
Net office equipment	1,759	3,037
Equipment under hire purchase, at cost	594,626	594,626
Less: accumulated depreciation	(594,626)	(594,626)
Net equipment under hire purchase		
Leasehold improvements, at cost	462,797	452,487
Less: accumulated depreciation	(313,631)	(196,472)
Net leasehold improvements	149,166	256,015
Total net property, plant and equipment	476,648	550,139
<b>Reconciliation of property, plant and equipment</b>		
Opening gross carrying amount	3,049,462	2,654,408
Add: additions purchased during the year	234,799	395,054
Less: disposals made during the year	(720)	
Closing gross carrying amount	3,283,541	3,049,462
Opening accumulated depreciation and impairment losses	(2,499,323)	(2,236,813)
Add: disposals made during the year	258	
Less: depreciation expense charged	(307,828)	(262,510)
Closing accumulated depreciation and impairment losses	(2,806,893)	(2,499,323)
Total net property, plant and equipment	476,648	550,139

**Reconciliation of movements in property, plant and equipment by asset category**

Asset category	Opening net carrying amount \$	Additions during year \$	Disposals during year \$	Depreciation expense \$	Closing net carrying amount \$
Laboratory equipment	231,485	163,780		(153,429)	241,836
Computer equipment	59,602	60,709	(462)	(35,962)	83,887
Office equipment	3,037			(1,278)	1,759
Leasehold improvements	256,015	10,310		(117,159)	149,166
Totals	550,139	234,799	(462)	(307,828)	476,648



Table of Contents**15. INTANGIBLE ASSETS**

	Consolidated	
	2017	2016
	\$	\$
<b>Patents</b>		
Patents, at cost	36,662,592	36,662,592
Less: accumulated amortization	(32,950,533)	(32,938,414)
Less: impairment losses	(3,712,059)	(3,632,338)
Total net patents		91,840
<b>Other intangible assets</b>		
Assets associated with BREVAGen™ breast cancer risk test, at cost		
test, at cost	1,033,273	1,033,273
Less: accumulated amortization	(568,300)	(516,636)
Less: impairment losses	(464,973)	
Total net other intangible assets		516,637
Total net intangible assets		608,477
<b>Reconciliation of patents</b>		
Opening net carrying amount	91,840	116,077
Less: amortization expense charged (refer below)	(12,119)	(24,237)
Less: impairment expense	(79,721)	
Total net patents		91,840
<b>Reconciliation of other intangible assets</b>		
Opening net carrying amount	516,637	619,964
Less: amortization expense charged (refer below)	(51,664)	(103,327)
Less: impairment expense	(464,973)	
Total net other intangible assets		516,637

**Impairment**

Slow growth rates in the market adoption of the BREVAGen<sup>plus</sup>® breast cancer risk assessment test contributing to net losses represented an impairment triggering event. The Group performed an impairment assessment, which resulted in a non-cash impairment of the Patents and other Intangible assets associated with the BREVAGen™ test of \$544,694.

In order to support this conclusion, the Company undertook an impairment assessment as follows:

- i. calculating the value in use of each Intangible asset using a discounted cash flow model. These models used cash flows (revenues, expenses and capital expenditure) for each asset based on their remaining useful lives of approximately 4 years. The cash flows were then discounted to net present values at an average of the most recent rates utilized by other Companies in the industry in which the Group operates and have been assessed by management to align with the long term growth profile of the Company. A pre-tax discount rate of 14.5%, and a growth rate estimate of 2.0% was used throughout the value in use model, and

- ii. comparing the resulting value in use of each Intangible asset to their respective book values

The Company also performed sensitivity analysis over the value in use calculations by varying the assumptions used to assess the impact on the valuations.

Table of Contents**15. INTANGIBLE ASSETS (cont.)****Impairment (cont.)**

On consideration of all of these key assumptions the Company, in line with its impairment testing policy has concluded that the intangible asset should be fully impaired at year end, and that a non-cash impairment expense of \$544,694 be recognized at June 30, 2017.

**Remaining useful lives**

The assets associated with the BREVAGen™ breast cancer risk test had a remaining useful life of 4 years as at June 30, 2017.

**Disclosure of expenses**

The total amortization expense charged during the year in respect of intangible assets of \$63,783 is disclosed in the consolidated statement of comprehensive income under the heading of laboratory and research and development costs.

**16. TRADE AND OTHER PAYABLES (CURRENT)**

	2017	Consolidated	2016
	\$		\$
Trade payables	398,291		392,322
Other payables	195,584		270,504
Accrued expenses	304,228		175,157
Total current trade and other payables	898,103		837,983

*Note: Trade payables for the Group include amounts due in US dollars of USD 137,154 (2016: USD 178,679) and Swiss francs of CHF 380 (2016: CHF 2,702).*

Refer Note 30 for details of management of interest rate, foreign exchange and liquidity risks applicable to trade and other payables for which, due to their short-term nature, their carrying value approximates their fair value.

**17. PROVISIONS (CURRENT AND NON-CURRENT)**

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

<b>Current provisions</b>		
Annual leave	239,821	223,100
Long service leave	243,411	217,679
Make good *	83,958	53,427
Total current provisions	567,190	494,206
<b>Non-current provisions</b>		
Long service leave	56,328	36,145
Make good *	7,632	38,163
Total non-current provisions	63,960	74,308
Total provisions	631,150	568,514

---

\* Make good provision

Genetic Technologies Limited is required to restore the leased premises situated in Fitzroy, Melbourne to their original condition at the end of the lease terms. A provision has been recognized for the present value of the estimated expenditure required to remove any leasehold improvements. These costs have been capitalized as part of the cost of leasehold improvements and are amortized over the shorter of the term of the lease or the useful life of the assets. See Note 2 (w) for the Group's other accounting policies relevant to provisions.

Table of Contents**17. PROVISIONS (CURRENT AND NON-CURRENT) (cont.)**

	2017	Consolidated	2016
	\$		\$
<b>Reconciliation of annual leave provision</b>			
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	223,100		200,957
Add: obligation accrued during the year	183,613		260,434
Less: utilized during the year	(166,892)		(238,291)
Balance at the end of the financial year	239,821		223,100
<b>Reconciliation of long service leave provision</b>			
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	253,824		354,271
(Less)/ Add: obligation accrued during the year	58,699		(16,904)
Less: utilized during the year	(12,784)		(83,543)
Balance at the end of the financial year	299,739		253,824

*Note: The current provisions for annual leave and long service leave include a total amount of \$428,891 (2016: \$298,846) in respect of obligations which, based on historical evidence, the Company estimates will be settled more than 12 months from balance date.*

**18. FINANCIAL LIABILITIES AT FAIR VALUE THROUGH THE PROFIT OR LOSS (CURRENT AND NON-CURRENT)****Debt convertible notes**

During the prior financial year \$25,000 convertible notes plus capitalized interest were converted into 1,091,093 ordinary shares of the Company. The notes were originally issued as secured (debt) notes to existing and new Australian institutional and wholesale investors as part of a \$2,150,000 raising, carrying a 10% coupon rate, and as approved at the Annual General Meeting, held on 25 November 2014, became convertible notes which could convert into ordinary shares (at a 10.0% discount to the 5 day VWAP). These convertible notes carried free attached options to purchase further shares in the Company.

Table of Contents**19. FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENT OF FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS****(i) Fair value hierarchy**

This section explains the judgements and estimates made in determining the fair values of the financial instruments that are recognized and measured at fair value in the financial statements. To provide an indication about the reliability of the inputs used in determining fair value, the group has classified its financial instruments into the three levels prescribed under the Accounting Standards. An explanation of each level follows:

- (a) quoted prices (unadjusted) in active markets for identical assets or liabilities (level 1);
- (b) inputs other than prices included within level 1 that are observable for the asset or liability, either directly or indirectly (level 2); and
- (c) inputs for the asset or liability that are not based on observable market data (unobservable inputs) (level 3).

No level 1 or level 2 financial assets or liabilities were held by the Group as at 30 June 2017 and 2016

	<b>Convertible note (financial liabilities)</b>
	\$
<b>Opening balance 1 July 2015</b>	(25,000)
Conversions to equity	25,000
<b>Closing balance 30 June 2016</b>	

The Group's policy is to recognize transfers into and transfers out of fair value hierarchy levels as at the end of the reporting period.

There were no transfers between levels 1 and 2 for recurring fair value measurements during the year, as the Company did not have any fair value assets or liabilities at 30 June 2017.

**(ii) Valuation techniques used to derive level 2 and level 3 fair values**

The Group obtains independent valuations for its financial assets and financial liabilities at least annually.

At the end of each reporting period, the directors update their assessment of the fair value of each asset and liability, taking into account the most recent independent valuations. The directors determine an assets or liabilities value range within a range of reasonable fair value estimates.

The fair value of financial instruments that are not traded in an active market is determined using valuation techniques. These valuation techniques maximize the use of observable market data where it is available and rely as little as possible on entity specific estimates. If all significant inputs required to fair value an instrument are observable, the instrument is included in level 2. If one or more of the significant inputs is not based on observable market data, the instrument is included in level 3.

**(iii) Valuation processes**

*Convertible note*

The value of the Convertible Note outstanding as at July 1, 2015 was calculated with reference to its face value, which approximates its fair value.

Table of Contents**20. CONTRIBUTED EQUITY**

	2017	Consolidated	2016
	\$		\$
<b>Issued and paid-up capital</b>			
Fully paid ordinary shares	<b>122,382,625</b>		115,272,576
Total contributed equity	<b>122,382,625</b>		115,272,576

**Movements in shares on issue**

<b>Year ended June 30, 2016</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>\$</b>
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	1,714,191,631	115,247,128
Add: shares issued as part of the conversion of convertible notes	1,091,093	27,102
Less: transaction costs arising on share issue		(1,654)
Balance at the end of the financial year	1,715,282,724	115,272,576

<b>Year ended June 30, 2017</b>	<b>Shares</b>	<b>\$</b>
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	1,715,282,724	115,272,576
Add: shares issued as part of private placements	720,000,000	8,049,369
Add: facility fee rebate on previously issued shares*		295,110
Less: transaction costs arising on share issue		(1,234,430)
Balance at the end of the financial year	2,435,282,724	122,382,625

\* Rebate of a facility fee originally provided to Kentgrove Capital on commencement date of a Standby Equity Placement Facility Agreement entered into in January 2015 that was paid on expiry of the facility agreement on 21 January 2017 in accordance with the agreement, representing a reduction in total equity transaction costs associated with the commencement of the facility.

**Terms and conditions of contributed equity**

Ordinary shares have the right to receive dividends as declared and, in the event of winding up the Company, to participate in the proceeds from the sale of all surplus assets in proportion to the number of and amounts paid up on shares held. Ordinary shares, which have no par value, entitle their holder to one vote, either in person or by proxy, at a meeting of the Company.

**Capital management**



When managing capital, Management's objective is to ensure that the Group continues as a going concern as well as to provide returns for shareholders and benefits for other stakeholders. Management also aims to maintain a capital structure to reduce the entity's cost of capital.

Table of Contents**21. RESERVES**

	Consolidated	
	2017	2016
	\$	\$
Foreign currency translation	1,288,896	1,419,551
Share-based payments	4,755,597	4,635,310
Total reserves	6,044,493	6,054,861
<b>Reconciliation of foreign currency translation reserve</b>		
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	1,419,551	112,332
Add: net currency translation gain / (loss)	(130,655)	1,307,219
Balance at the end of the financial year	1,288,896	1,419,551
<b>Reconciliation of share-based payments reserve</b>		
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	4,635,310	4,585,071
Add: share-based payments expense	120,287	50,239
Balance at the end of the financial year	4,755,597	4,635,310

**Nature and purpose of reserves***Foreign currency translation reserve*

This reserve is used to record exchange differences arising from the translation of the financial statements of foreign subsidiaries.

*Share-based payments reserve*

This reserve is used to record the value of share-based payments provided to employees and others providing similar services as part of their remuneration.

**22. ACCUMULATED LOSSES**

Balance at the beginning of the financial year	(109,444,248)	(100,985,283)
Add: net loss attributable to owners of Genetic Technologies Limited	(8,403,826)	(8,458,965)
Balance at the end of the financial year	(117,848,074)	(109,444,248)

**23. OPTIONS**

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

As at June 30, 2017, the following options over ordinary shares in the Company were outstanding.

	<b>2017</b>		<b>Weighted ave. exercise price</b>		<b>2016</b>		<b>Weighted ave. exercise price</b>
Unlisted employee options (refer below)	54,736,111	\$	0.016		33,486,111	\$	0.022
Unlisted options attached to convertible notes	20,366,667	\$	0.015		20,366,667	\$	0.015
	75,102,778	\$	0.016		53,852,778	\$	0.019

On November 30, 2001, the Directors of the Company established a Staff Share Plan. On November 19, 2008, the shareholders of the Company approved the introduction of a new Employee Option Plan. Under the terms of the respective Plans, the Directors of the Company may grant options over ordinary shares in Genetic Technologies Limited to executives, consultants and employees of the Group. The options, which are granted at nil cost, are not transferable and are not quoted on the ASX. As at June 30, 2017, there were 6 executives and 4 employees who held options that had been granted under the Plans. Options granted under the Plans carry no rights to dividends and no voting rights.

Table of Contents**23. OPTIONS (cont.)**

The movements in the number of options granted under the Plans are as follows:

	2017	Weighted ave. exercise price	2016	Weighted ave. exercise price
<b>Unlisted employee options</b>				
Balance at the beginning of the financial year	33,486,111	\$ 0.022	3,875,000	\$ 0.140
Add: options granted during the year	22,750,000	\$ 0.010	33,736,111	\$ 0.022
Less: options exercised during the year				
Less: options forfeited during the year	(1,500,000)	\$ 0.049	(4,125,000)	\$ 0.136
Balance at the end of the financial year	54,736,111	\$ 0.016	33,486,111	\$ 0.022

There were no options exercised under the Employee Option Plan during the year ended June 30, 2017 (2016: Nil).

The numbers of options outstanding as at June 30, 2017 by ASX code, including the respective dates of expiry and exercise prices, are tabled below (refer Note 25 for further information). The options tabled below are not listed on ASX.

Option description	2017	Weighted ave. exercise price	2016	Weighted ave. exercise price
<b>Unlisted employee options</b>				
GTGAA (expiring May 31, 2019)			250,000	\$ 0.040
GTGAD (expiring September 14, 2020)	250,000	\$ 0.058	1,000,000	\$ 0.058
GTGAD (expiring November 24, 2020)	24,236,111	\$ 0.020	24,236,111	\$ 0.020
GTGAD (expiring January 31, 2021)			500,000	\$ 0.039
GTGAD (expiring March 31, 2021)	7,500,000	\$ 0.020	7,500,000	\$ 0.020
GTGAD (expiring February 16, 2022)	22,750,000	\$ 0.010		
	54,736,111	\$ 0.016	33,486,111	\$ 0.022
<b>Unlisted options attached to convertible notes</b>				
GTGAC (expiring December 2, 2018)	20,366,667	\$ 0.015	20,366,667	\$ 0.015
Balance at the end of the financial year	75,102,778	\$ 0.016	53,852,778	\$ 0.019
Exercisable at the end of the financial year	36,234,722	\$ 0.017	20,450,000	\$ 0.015

The weighted average remaining contractual life of options outstanding as at June 30, 2017 was 3.28 years (2016: 3.70 years).

Table of Contents**24. SEGMENT INFORMATION****Identification of reportable segments**

The Group has identified a sole operating segment as reported that is consistent with the internal reporting provided to the chief operating decision maker and is aligned to the one major revenue stream.

The Groups operating segment is summarized as follows:

**Business segments**

Segment		Revenues and income		Totals	Profit / (loss)
		Sales	Other		
		\$	\$	\$	\$
Operations	2017	518,506	344,112	862,618	(8,403,826)
	2016	824,586	792,585	1,617,171	(8,458,965)
	2015	2,011,918	2,794,506	4,806,424	(8,810,170)

Segment		Assets	Liabilities	Amortization	Purchases of
		\$	\$	/depreciation	equipment
		\$	\$	\$	\$
Operations	2017	12,108,297	(1,529,253)	(371,611)	234,799
	2016	13,289,686	(1,406,497)	(390,074)	395,054
	2015	20,719,732	(1,760,484)	(232,203)	304,135

**Geographic information**

*Australia* is the home country of the parent entity and the location of the Company's genetic testing and licensing operations.

*USA* is the home of Phenogen Sciences Inc. and GeneType Corporation.

*Switzerland* is the home of GeneType AG.

**Geographic information**

		Revenues and income		Totals	Profit/(Loss)
		Sales	Other		
		\$	\$	\$	\$
Australia	2017	18,215	344,112	362,327	(7,000,994)
	2016	220	792,585	792,805	(4,241,451)
	2015	910,740	2,794,358	3,705,098	(1,519,192)
USA	2017	500,291		500,291	(1,371,001)
	2016	824,366		824,366	(4,197,368)
	2015	1,101,178	148	1,101,326	(7,276,878)
Other	2017				(31,831)
	2016				(20,146)
	2015				(14,100)
Totals	2017	518,506	344,112	862,618	(8,403,826)
	2016	824,586	792,585	1,617,171	(8,458,965)
	2015	2,011,918	2,794,506	4,806,424	(8,810,170)

Table of Contents**24. SEGMENT INFORMATION (cont.)**

		Assets \$	Liabilities \$	Amortization /depreciation \$	Purchases of Equipment \$
Australia	2017	11,473,094	(1,291,529)	(362,677)	223,096
	2016	12,553,539	(1,199,257)	(379,944)	382,893
	2015	3,139,778	(1,532,911)	(219,784)	304,135
USA	2017	632,419	(233,301)	(8,934)	11,703
	2016	733,168	(202,200)	(10,130)	12,161
	2015	17,576,978	(224,917)	(12,419)	
Other	2017	2,784	(4,423)		
	2016	2,979	(5,040)		
	2015	2,976	(2,656)		
Totals	2017	12,108,297	(1,529,253)	(371,611)	234,799
	2016	13,289,686	(1,406,497)	(390,074)	395,054
	2015	20,719,732	(1,760,484)	(232,203)	304,135

**Additional segment disclosures**

*Other revenues and income* includes interest received of \$38,765 (2016: \$67,099 and 2015: \$39,951).

*Expenses* includes employee benefits expenses of \$3,594,936 (2016: \$3,774,770 and 2015: \$5,470,007).

*Assets* - includes cash of \$10,988,255 (2016: \$11,179,687 and 2015: \$18,341,357).

*Liabilities* includes trade and other payables of \$898,103 (2016: \$837,983 and 2015: \$1,102,974) and provisions of \$631,150 (2016: \$568,514 and 2015: \$555,228).

Included in the above figures are the following intersegment balances and transactions:

	2017 \$	Consolidated 2016 \$	2015 \$
Loan payable (USA) and loan receivable (Australia)	348,835	512,816	16,948,601
Foreign exchange gain (USA) and foreign exchange loss (Australia)	776,295	1,750,759	3,823,791
Cost of sales (USA) and sales (Australia)	74,762	91,896	153,581

**Segment products and locations**

The principal geographic segment is Australia, with the Company's headquarters being located in Melbourne in the State of Victoria however the key sales activities take place in the USA.

**Major customers**

During the years ended June 30, 2017 & June 30, 2016 there was no customer from whom the Group generated revenues representing more than 10% of the total consolidated revenue from operations or outstanding receivables.



Table of Contents**25. SHARE BASED PAYMENTS****(a) Employee option plan**

On November 30, 2001, the Directors of the Company established a Staff Share Plan. On November 19, 2008, the shareholders of the Company approved the introduction of a new Employee Option Plan. Under the terms of the respective Plans, the Directors may, at their discretion, grant options over the ordinary shares in the Genetic Technologies Limited to executives, consultants, employees, and former Non-Executive Directors, of the Group.

During the year the following options over ordinary shares were granted pursuant the Employee Option Plan at no cost;

- i. 1,250,000 options (2016: 2,000,000 options) to a number of employees of the Company's US Subsidiary, Phenogen Sciences Inc. The options vest based on non-market performance conditions (requirement to remain employed by the Company) in three tranches commencing on the date of the 2017 Annual General Meeting (AGM) of the Company and then at each of the 12 and 24 month anniversaries thereafter (2016: three equal tranches after 12 months, 24 months, and 36 months from date of grant, respectively). The fair value of each option granted is estimated by an external valuer using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model, with assumptions as follows

<b>Grant Date</b>	<b>2017 February 17, 2017</b>	<b>2016 April 1, 2016</b>	<b>2016 November 25, 2015</b>
Options issued	1,250,000	500,000	1,500,000
Dividend yield			
Historic volatility and expected volatility	60%	80%	80%
Option exercise price	\$ 0.010	\$ 0.039	\$ 0.058
Weighted average exercise price	\$ 0.010	\$ 0.039	\$ 0.058
Risk-free interest rate	2.19%	1.93%	2.22%
Expected life of an option	4.5 years	4.3 years	4.5 years
Model used	Black-Scholes	Black-Scholes	Black-Scholes

As at June 30, 2017, there were 4 employees who held options that had been granted under the Plan.

The expected price volatility is based on the historic volatility (based on the remaining life of the options), adjusted for any expected changes to future volatility due to publicly available information.

- ii. 21,500,000 options (2016: 31,736,111) to a number of KMP. The options vest based on non-market

performance conditions (requirement to remain employed by the Company) in three tranches commencing on the date of the 2017 Annual General Meeting (AGM) of the Company and then at each of the 12 and 24 month anniversaries thereafter (2016: market related vesting condition of share price growth, whereby the options are exercisable at any time after the vesting conditions are met for a period of up to 5 years after granting. The vesting conditions that must be met before a tranche of Options shall vest, namely the 3 month VWAP at which the shares of the Company must be trading on the ASX, are \$0.05, \$ 0.10 and \$0.20). The fair value of each option granted is estimated by an external valuer using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model (2016: Monte Carlo simulation analysis), with assumptions as follows

	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>2016</b>
<b>Grant Date</b>	<b>February 17, 2017</b>	<b>April 1, 2016</b>	<b>November 25, 2015</b>
Options issued	21,500,000	7,500,000	24,236,111
Dividend yield			
Historic volatility and expected volatility	60%	80%	80%
Option exercise price	\$ 0.010	\$ 0.020	\$ 0.020
Weighted average exercise price	\$ 0.010	\$ 0.020	\$ 0.020
Risk-free interest rate	2.19%	1.93%	2.22%
Expected life of an option	4.5 years	4.3 years	4.5 years
Model used	Black-Scholes	Monte Carlo	Monte Carlo

Table of Contents**25. SHARE BASED PAYMENTS (cont.)****Modification of share-based payment arrangements**

In February 2017, the Company modified the vesting conditions of the 31,736,111 options granted to KMP during 2016 from that of market related share price growth to non-market conditions of continuing employment with the Company, vesting in two equal tranches on the June 30, 2017 and June 30, 2018. All other vesting conditions attached to these option, including Option exercise price and expiry date remained unchanged. The fair value of the options at the date of the modification was \$358,131 less than the original fair value, primarily as a result of the reduced share price at date of revaluation, as follows;

Grant Date	Fair Value Post Modification		Fair Value Pre Modification	
	1 April 2016	25 Nov 2015	1 April 2016	25 Nov 2015
Options issued	7,500,000	24,236,111	7,500,000	24,236,111
Dividend yield				
Historic volatility and expected volatility	60%	60%	80%	80%
Option exercise price	\$ 0.020	\$ 0.020	\$ 0.020	\$ 0.020
Weighted average exercise price	\$ 0.020	\$ 0.020	\$ 0.020	\$ 0.020
Risk-free interest rate	2.08%	2.02%	1.93%	2.22%
Expected life of an option	3.6 years	3.3 years	4.3 years	4.5 years
Model used	Black-Scholes	Black-Scholes	Monte Carlo	Monte Carlo

In line with the relevant accounting standards, the reduction in fair value of the options will not be recognized, with the expense of the original option grant to continue to be recognized as if the terms had not been modified.

**(c) Expenses arising from share-based payment transactions**

Total expenses arising from share-based payment transactions recognized during the period as part of employee benefit expense were as follows:

	2017	Consolidated	2015
	\$	2016	\$
		\$	
Options issued under employee option plan	120,287	50,239	(26,536)
Shares issued as consideration for standby equity placement facility			330,059
Total	120,287	50,239	303,523

**26. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES**

Edgar Filing: GENETIC TECHNOLOGIES LTD - Form 20-F

<b>Operating lease expenditure commitments</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>Consolidated 2016</b>	<b>2015</b>
	\$	\$	\$
Minimum operating lease payments			
- not later than one year	227,992	220,486	75,536
- later than one year but not later than five years	35,676	248,481	
- later than five years			
Total minimum operating lease payments	263,668	468,967	75,536

F-32

---

Table of Contents**26. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES (cont.)**

As at June 30, 2017, the above operating leases related to the following premises that are currently occupied by the Group:

Location	Landlord	Use	Date of expiry of lease	Minimum payments (\$)
60-66 Hanover Street Fitzroy, Victoria 3065 Australia	Crude Pty. Ltd.	Office / laboratory	August 31, 2018	248,481
9115 Harris Corners Parkway, Suite 320 Charlotte, North Carolina 28269 USA	New Boston Harris Corners LLC	Office	October 31, 2017	15,187
			Total	263,668

Apart from the above, there were no other commitments or contingencies as at June 30, 2017.

**27. AUDITORS REMUNERATION**

	2017 \$	Consolidated 2016 \$	2015 \$
<b>Audit and assurance services</b>			
PricewaterhouseCoopers in respect of:			
Audit(1)	325,972	334,560	558,360
Audit related	107,451		
Other audit firms in respect of:			
Audit of the Financial Reports of subsidiaries	4,070	5,868	
Total remuneration in respect of audit services	437,493	340,428	558,360

(1) Audit fees consist of services that would normally be provided in connection with statutory & regulatory filings or engagements, including services that generally only the independent accountant can reasonably provide.

**28. RELATED PARTY DISCLOSURES****Ultimate parent**

Genetic Technologies Limited is the ultimate Australian parent company. As at the date of this Report, no shareholder controls more than 50% of the issued capital of the Company.

**Transactions within the Group and with other related parties**

During the year ended June 30, 2017, the only transactions between entities within the Group and other related parties occurred, are as listed below. Except where noted, all amounts were charged on similar to market terms and at commercial rates.

*Phenogen Sciences Inc.*

During the year ended June 30, 2017, Phenogen Sciences Inc, a subsidiary, purchased testing services from Genetic Technologies Corporation Pty. Ltd., another subsidiary at a cost of \$74,762 (2016: \$91,676 and 2015: \$153,581). This transaction is eliminated on consolidation.

*Debt convertible notes*

During the year ended June 30, 2015 the Company finalized the raising of \$2,150,000 via the issue of unlisted secured (debt) notes to existing and new Australian institutional and wholesale investors. The debt notes carried a 10.0% coupon rate, and as approved at the Annual General Meeting, held on November 25, 2014, became convertible notes which could convert into ordinary shares (at a 10.0% discount to the 5 day VWAP). These convertible notes also carry free attached options to purchase further shares in the Company.

Table of Contents**25. RELATED PARTY DISCLOSURES (cont.)**

\$125,000 of these convertible notes were issued to a holder associated with Dr Lindsay Wakefield, a Company director at the time of issue, on the same terms and conditions as other note holders, all of which were converted during the year ended June 30, 2015. The 8,333,333 share options attached to these convertible notes remain unexercised at the end of the year.

There were no transactions with parties related to Key Management Personnel during the year other than that disclosed above.

**Details of Directors and Key Management Personnel as at balance date***Directors*

Dr Malcolm R. Brandon (*Non-Executive Chairman*)  
 Mr. Eutillio Buccilli (*Executive Director & Chief Executive Officer*)  
 Mr. Grahame Leonard AM (*Non-Executive*)  
 Dr Lindsay Wakefield (*Non-Executive*)  
 Dr Paul Kasian (*Non-Executive*)

*Executives*

Mr. Kevin Fischer (*Chief Financial Officer*)  
 Ms Diana Newport (*Quality and Business Operations Director*)  
 Dr Richard Allman (*Scientific Director*)  
 Mr. Chris Saunders (*Vice President, Sales and Marketing Phenogen*)  
 Dr Susan Gross (*Senior Medical Director Phenogen*)

	2017 \$	Consolidated 2016 \$	2015 \$
<b>Remuneration of Key Management Personnel</b>			
Short-term employee benefits	1,533,457	1,350,986	1,457,725
Post-employment benefits	101,320	104,081	118,660
Share-based payments	121,269	49,445	(25,959)
Other long-term benefits	61,594	28,552	(8,854)
Termination benefits		53,795	
Total remuneration of Key Management Personnel	1,817,640	1,586,859	1,541,572

Table of Contents**29. SUBSIDIARIES**

The following diagram is a depiction of the Group structure as at June 30, 2017.

Name of Group company	Incorporation details	Group interest (%)		Net carrying value (\$)	
		2017	2016	2017	2016
<i>Entities held directly by parent</i>					
GeneType Pty. Ltd. (Dormant)	September 5, 1990 Victoria, Australia	100%	100%		
Genetic Technologies Corporation Pty. Ltd. (Genetic testing)	October 11, 1996 N.S.W., Australia	100%	100%	2	2
RareCollect Pty. Ltd. (Dormant)	March 7, 2001 N.S.W., Australia	100%	100%	10	10
GeneType AG * (Dormant)	February 13, 1989 Zug, Switzerland	100%	100%		1,350
GeneType Corporation (Dormant)	December 18, 1989 California, U.S.A.	100%	100%		
Phenogen Sciences Inc. (BREVA Gen™ )	June 28, 2010 Delaware, U.S.A.	100%	100%	11,006	11,006
Total carrying value				11,018	12,368

\* At June 30, 2017, GeneType AG was placed into members' voluntary liquidation.



Table of Contents**30. FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT**

The Group's activities expose it to a variety of financial risks such as credit risk, market risk (including foreign currency risk and interest rate risk) and liquidity risk. The Group's overall risk management program focuses on the unpredictability of financial markets and seeks to minimize potential adverse effects on the financial performance of the Group. The Group uses different methods to measure the different types of risk to which it is exposed. These methods include sensitivity analysis in the case of foreign exchange, interest rate and aging analysis for credit risk.

Risk management is managed by the Executive under guidance provided by the Board of Directors via its Audit Committee, which provides guidance for overall risk management, as well as policies covering specific areas, such as credit risk, foreign exchange risk and interest rate risk. The Committee identifies and evaluates financial risks in close cooperation with the Group's executive management.

The Group's principal financial instruments comprise cash and cash equivalents. The Group also has other financial assets and liabilities, such as trade receivables and payables, which arise directly from its operations.

The Group does not typically enter into derivative transactions, such as interest rate swaps or forward currency contracts. It is, and has been throughout the period under review, the Group's policy that no trading in financial instruments shall be undertaken. The main risks arising from the Group's financial instruments are credit risk exposures, foreign currency risk, interest rate risk and liquidity risk. The policies for managing each of these risks are summarized below.

Details of the significant accounting policies and methods adopted, including the criteria for recognition, the basis of measurement and the basis on which income and expenses are recognized, in respect of each class of financial asset, financial liability and equity instrument are disclosed in Note 2.

The Group holds the following financial instruments:

	<b>Consolidated</b>	
	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
	<b>\$</b>	<b>\$</b>
<b>Financial assets</b>		
Cash at bank / on hand	10,988,255	11,179,687
Trade and other receivables	426,272	630,773
Performance bond and deposits	3,376	4,209
Financial assets at fair value through profit or loss		
Total financial assets	11,417,903	11,814,669
<b>Financial liabilities</b>		
Trade and other payables	898,103	837,983
Total financial liabilities	898,103	837,983

**Credit risk**

The Group's credit risk is managed on a Group basis. Credit risk arises from cash and cash equivalents and deposits with banks and financial institutions, as well as credit exposures to customers, including outstanding receivables and committed transactions. The trade & other receivables balance at year end includes an accrual estimate of revenue to be collected from the sale of BREVA Gen™ and BREVA Genplus® tests. This estimate is calculated based on historical data of amounts received from tests sold and is sensitive to/ may be impacted by the recoverability of the amounts through the U.S. healthcare reimbursement system. Recoverability of accrued revenues for tests performed is regularly monitored by management. Other receivables represent amounts accrued for which reimbursement will be applied for from the Australian Taxation Authority under the Government's Research & Development grant. The maximum exposures to credit risk at June 30, 2017 in relation to each class of recognized financial asset is the carrying amount of those assets, as indicated in the balance sheet.

Table of Contents**30. FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT (cont.)****Credit risk (cont.)**

Financial assets included on the balance sheet that potentially subject the Group to concentration of credit risk consist principally of cash and cash equivalents and trade receivables. In accordance with the guidelines of the Group's Short Term Investment Policy, the Group minimizes this concentration of risk by placing its cash and cash equivalents with financial institutions that maintain superior credit ratings in order to limit the degree of credit exposure. For banks and financial institutions, only independently-rated parties with a minimum rating of A-1 are accepted. The Group has also established guidelines relative to credit ratings, diversification and maturities that seek to maintain safety and liquidity. The Group does not require collateral to provide credit to its customers. Once a BREVA Gen™ or BREVA Genplus® test has been performed, the patient elects to self-pay or where applicable seek healthcare provider payment on receipt of the outcome of the test. The nature of this revenue recognition cycle increases the risk of credit exposure. The Group has not entered into any transactions that qualify as a financial derivative instrument.

The trade receivables balance is reflective of historical collection rates which are monitored on an ongoing basis and adjusted accordingly based on changing collection and test data. As at June 30, 2017, the balance of the Group's total accrued net trade receivables was \$200,837 (2016: \$392,521 (refer Note 12).

Credit risk further arises in relation to financial guarantees given by the Group to certain parties in respect of obligations of its subsidiaries. Such guarantees are only provided in exceptional circumstances.

An analysis of the aging of trade and other receivables is provided below:

	2017	Consolidated	2016
	\$		\$
<b>Net trade and other receivables</b>			
Current (less than 30 days)	426,272		630,773
31 days to 60 days			
61 days to 90 days (note)			
Greater than 90 days (note)			
Total net trade and other receivables (Note 12)	426,272		630,773

Note: Given the nature of the trade receivables for the remaining business all amounts are considered to be current.



Table of Contents**30. FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT (cont.)****Market risk***Foreign currency risk*

The Group operates internationally and is exposed to foreign currency exchange risk, primarily with respect to the US dollar, through financial assets and liabilities. It is the Group's policy not to hedge these transactions as the exposure is considered to be minimal from a consolidated operations perspective. Further, as the Group incurs expenses which are payable in US dollars, the financial assets that are held in US dollars provide a natural hedge for the Group.

Foreign exchange risk arises from planned future commercial transactions and recognized assets and liabilities denominated in a currency that is not the entity's functional currency and net investments in foreign operations. The risk is measured using sensitivity analysis and cash flow forecasting.

The Group has a Foreign Exchange Management Policy which was developed to establish a formal framework and procedures for the efficient management of the financial risks that impact on Genetic Technologies Limited through its activities outside of Australia, predominantly in the United States. The policy governs the way in which the financial assets and liabilities of the Group that are denominated in foreign currencies are managed and any risks associated with that management are identified and addressed. Under the policy, which is updated on a regular basis as circumstances dictate, the Group generally retains in foreign currency only sufficient funds to meet the expected expenditures in that currency. Surplus funds are converted into Australian dollars as and when deemed appropriate by the Board in consultation with the CFO.

As at June 30, 2017, the Group held the following financial assets and liabilities that were denominated in foreign currencies:

<b>Consolidated</b>	<b>Year</b>	<b>USD</b>	<b>EUR</b>	<b>CHF</b>
<b>Financial assets</b>				
Cash at bank / on hand	2017	6,203,335	30,852	
	2016	5,108,964	32,767	
Total financial assets	2017	6,203,335	30,852	
	2016	5,108,964	32,767	
<b>Financial liabilities</b>				
Trade and other payables	2017	99,540		
	2016	96,069		
Total financial liabilities	2017	99,540		
	2016	96,069		

Notes: **USD** United States dollars    **EUR** European euros    **CHF** Swiss francs

During the year ended June 30, 2017, the Australian dollar / US dollar exchange rate strengthened by 3.3%, from 0.7441 at the beginning of the year to 0.7686 at the end of the year.

Based on the financial instruments held at June 30, 2017, had the Australian dollar weakened/ strengthened by 10% against the US dollar with all other variables held constant, the Group's loss for the year would have been \$882,000 lower/ \$722,000 higher (2016: loss \$748,000 lower / loss \$612,000 higher), mainly as a result of changes in the values of cash and cash equivalents which are denominated in US dollars, as detailed in the above tables.

Table of Contents**30. FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT (cont.)****Market risk (cont.)***Interest rate risk*

The Group's main interest rate risk arises in relation to its short-term deposits with various financial institutions. If rates were to decrease, the Group may generate less interest revenue from such deposits. However, given the relatively short duration of such deposits, the associate risk is relatively minimal.

The Group has a Short Term Investment Policy which was developed to manage the Group's surplus cash and cash equivalents. In this context, the Group adopts a prudent approach that is tailored to cash forecasts rather than seeking high returns that may compromise access to funds as and when they are required. Under the policy, the Group deposits its surplus cash in a range of deposits / securities over different time frames and with different institutions in order to diversify its portfolio and minimize risk.

On a monthly basis, Management provides the Board with a detailed list of all cash and cash equivalents, showing the periods over which the cash has been deposited, the name and credit rating of the institution holding the deposit and the interest rate at which the funds have been deposited.

At June 30, 2017, if interest rates had changed by +/- 50 basis points from the year-end rates, with all other variables held constant, the Group's loss for the year would have been \$12,000 lower / higher (2016: loss \$20,000 lower / higher), as a result of higher / lower interest income from cash and cash equivalents. Consolidated equity for the Group would have been \$12,000 higher / lower (2016: \$20,000 higher / lower) mainly as a result of an increase / decrease in the fair value of cash and cash equivalents.

The exposure to interest rate risks and the effective interest rates of financial assets and liabilities, both recognized and unrealized, for the Group is as follows:

Consolidated	Year	Floating rate \$	Fixed rate \$	Carrying amount \$	Weighted ave. effective rate %	Ave. maturity Period Days
<b>Financial assets</b>						
Cash at bank / on hand	2017	2,468,730		2,468,730	1.75%	At call
	2016	3,952,078		3,952,078	1.98%	At call
Performance bond / deposits	2017		3,376	3,376		At call
	2016		4,209	4,209		At call
Totals	2017	2,468,730	3,376	2,472,106		
	2016	3,952,078	4,209	3,956,287		

**Financial liabilities**

Financial liabilities at fair value

through profit or loss

2017

2016

Totals

2017

2016

Note The Company holds the balance of its cash in non-interest bearing bank accounts.



Table of Contents**30. FINANCIAL RISK MANAGEMENT (cont.)****Liquidity risk**

Prudent liquidity risk management implies maintaining sufficient cash and cash equivalents and the availability of funding through an adequate amount of committed credit facilities, such as its hire purchase and credit card facilities. The Group manages liquidity risk by continuously monitoring forecast and actual cash flows and, wherever possible, matching the maturity profiles of financial assets and liabilities. Due to the dynamic nature of the underlying businesses, Management aims to maintain flexibility in funding by keeping committed credit lines available. Surplus funds are generally only invested in instruments that are tradeable in highly liquid markets. Refer note 2(a) for further information on the material uncertainty that may cast significant doubt on the Company's ability to continue as a going concern.

A balanced view of cash inflows and outflows affecting the Group is summarized in the table below:

Consolidated	Year	< 6 months \$	6 to 12 months \$	1 to 5 years \$	> 5 years \$	Totals \$
<b>Financial assets</b>						
Cash at bank / on hand	2017	10,988,255				10,988,255
	2016	11,179,678				11,179,678
Trade and other receivables	2017	426,272				426,272
	2016	630,773				630,773
Performance bond and deposits	2017	3,376				3,376
	2016	4,209				4,209
Total financial assets	2017	11,417,903				11,417,903
	2016	11,814,669				11,814,669
<b>Financial liabilities</b>						
Trade and other payables	2017	898,103				898,103
	2016	837,983				837,983
Total financial liabilities	2017	898,103				898,103
	2016	837,983				837,983
Net maturity	2017	10,519,800				10,519,800
	2016	10,976,686				10,976,686

The Group had access to the following undrawn borrowing facility as at June 30, 2017:

Nature of facility	Facility limit \$	Amount used \$	Amount available \$
Credit card facility	306,128	(12,428)	293,700

**32. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

*Nasdaq notice*

On July 21, 2017, the Company announced that it received a letter dated July 19, 2017, from the Nasdaq Stock Market notifying the Company that for the last 30 consecutive business days, prior to July 18, the bid price for the Company's ordinary shares had closed below the minimum \$US1.00 per share requirement for continued inclusion under Nasdaq Marketplace Listing Rules (the "Rules").

The Notice stated that in accordance with the Rules the Company has 180 calendar days, or until January 15, 2018, to regain compliance. To regain compliance with the minimum bid price requirement, the Company's securities must meet or exceed the \$US1.00 per share price for 10 consecutive business days. This deficiency notice does not immediately affect the Company's Nasdaq listing.

The issuance of such notices, by Nasdaq, are a matter of procedure, with the Company currently considering its position and the options available in order to regain compliance.

There have been no other significant events which have occurred after balance date, outside of the commencement of the strategic review, which has been disclosed in Note 2(a)